

**Draft 2<sup>nd</sup> Edition of the  
*Tri-Council Policy Statement: Ethical Conduct for  
Research Involving Humans (TCPS)***

December 2009

---

**R E V I S E D**

---

**Comment Period Closing Date: March 1, 2010**



Interagency Advisory Panel  
on Research Ethics

Groupe consultatif interagences  
en éthique de la recherche

**Comments on this document can be sent before March 1, 2010 to:**

Interagency Secretariat on Research Ethics  
350 Albert Street  
Ottawa, ON Canada  
K1A 1H5  
Tel: 613-996-0072  
Fax: 613-996-7117  
[draft2e@pre.ethics.gc.ca](mailto:draft2e@pre.ethics.gc.ca)  
[www.pre.ethics.gc.ca](http://www.pre.ethics.gc.ca)

## **Acknowledgements**

The revised draft 2<sup>nd</sup> edition of the *Tri-Council Policy Statement: Ethical Conduct for Research Involving Humans* (TCPS) is the distillation of hundreds of comments received in response to the December 2008 draft, both orally and in writing. The Interagency Advisory Panel on Research Ethics (PRE or the Panel) gratefully acknowledges the many members of the research community and the public, including research participants, who took the time to analyze, critique and suggest improvements to the first draft. Their comments have made a significant and positive contribution to this revision.

The Panel wishes to acknowledge the work of former Panel members and to express special appreciation for the continuous support from members of the Interagency Secretariat on Research Ethics, past and present. Their commitment to the evolution of the TCPS has made this draft a reality.



# CONTENTS

<b>INTRODUCTION .....</b>	<b>1</b>
<i>Mandate of the Agencies .....</i>	<i>1</i>
<i>Compliance with the Policy .....</i>	<i>1</i>
<b>CHAPTER 1.....</b>	<b>3</b>
<b>ETHICS FRAMEWORK .....</b>	<b>3</b>
<i>A. The Importance of Research and Research Ethics.....</i>	<i>3</i>
<i>B. Core Principles.....</i>	<i>4</i>
<i>C. How to Apply this Policy.....</i>	<i>7</i>
<b>CHAPTER 2 .....</b>	<b>11</b>
<b>SCOPE AND APPROACH .....</b>	<b>11</b>
<i>A. Scope of Ethics Review.....</i>	<i>11</i>
<i>B. Approach to REB Review.....</i>	<i>18</i>
<b>CHAPTER 3.....</b>	<b>21</b>
<b>CONSENT .....</b>	<b>21</b>
<i>A. General Principles .....</i>	<i>21</i>
<i>B. Departures from General Principles of Consent.....</i>	<i>29</i>
<i>C. Capacity .....</i>	<i>33</i>
<i>D. Consent Shall Be Documented .....</i>	<i>36</i>
<b>CHAPTER 4.....</b>	<b>37</b>
<b>FAIRNESS AND EQUITY IN RESEARCH PARTICIPATION .....</b>	<b>37</b>
<i>A. Introduction .....</i>	<i>37</i>
<i>B. Appropriate Inclusion.....</i>	<i>38</i>
<i>C. Inappropriate Exclusion.....</i>	<i>38</i>
<i>D. Inappropriate Inclusion.....</i>	<i>41</i>
<b>CHAPTER 5.....</b>	<b>45</b>
<b>PRIVACY AND CONFIDENTIALITY .....</b>	<b>45</b>
<i>A. Key Definitions and Principles.....</i>	<i>45</i>
<i>B. The Ethical Duty of Confidentiality .....</i>	<i>47</i>
<i>C. Safeguarding Information .....</i>	<i>50</i>
<i>D. Consent and Secondary Use of Identifiable Information             for Research Purposes .....</i>	<i>51</i>
<i>E. Data Linkage.....</i>	<i>54</i>
<b>CHAPTER 6.....</b>	<b>57</b>
<b>GOVERNANCE OF RESEARCH ETHICS REVIEW .....</b>	<b>57</b>
<i>A. Establishment of REBs .....</i>	<i>57</i>
<i>B. Procedures for REB Review .....</i>	<i>64</i>
<i>C. Reconsideration and Appeals.....</i>	<i>70</i>
<i>D. Research Ethics Review During Publicly Declared Emergencies .....</i>	<i>72</i>

<b>CHAPTER 7</b> .....	<b>77</b>
<b>CONFLICT OF INTERESTS</b> .....	<b>77</b>
A. <i>Institutions and Conflicts of Interests</i> .....	<b>78</b>
B. <i>REB Members and Conflicts of Interests</i> .....	<b>81</b>
C. <i>Researchers and Conflicts of Interests</i> .....	<b>82</b>
 <b>CHAPTER 8</b> .....	 <b>85</b>
<b>MULTI-JURISDICTIONAL RESEARCH</b> .....	<b>85</b>
A. <i>Review Mechanisms for Research Involving Multiple Institut             and/or Multiple REBs</i> .....	<b>85</b>
B. <i>Review of Research Conducted Outside an REB's Jurisdiction</i> .....	<b>89</b>
 <b>CHAPTER 9</b> .....	 <b>93</b>
<b>RESEARCH INVOLVING ABORIGINAL PEOPLES IN CANADA</b> .....	<b>93</b>
<i>Introduction</i> .....	<b>93</b>
A. <i>Key Concepts and Definitions</i> .....	<b>94</b>
B. <i>Interpreting the Ethics Framework in Aboriginal Contexts</i> .....	<b>96</b>
C. <i>Applying Provisions of this Policy in Aboriginal Contexts</i> .....	<b>97</b>
 <b>CHAPTER 10</b> .....	 <b>117</b>
<b>QUALITATIVE RESEARCH</b> .....	<b>117</b>
A. <i>The Nature of Qualitative Research</i> .....	<b>117</b>
B. <i>Research Ethics Review of Qualitative Research</i> .....	<b>120</b>
 <b>CHAPTER 11</b> .....	 <b>129</b>
<b>CLINICAL TRIALS</b> .....	<b>129</b>
A. <i>Overview</i> .....	<b>129</b>
B. <i>Assessing Safety and Minimizing Risk</i> .....	<b>130</b>
C. <i>Phases of Clinical Trials</i> .....	<b>134</b>
D. <i>Sharing New Information</i> .....	<b>136</b>
E. <i>Therapeutic Misconception</i> .....	<b>138</b>
F. <i>Financial Conflicts of Interests</i> .....	<b>139</b>
G. <i>Placebo-Controlled Studies</i> .....	<b>140</b>
H. <i>Analysis and Dissemination of the Data and Results of             Clinical Trials</i> .....	<b>143</b>
 <b>CHAPTER 12</b> .....	 <b>149</b>
<b>HUMAN BIOLOGICAL MATERIALS AND MATERIALS RELATED TO     HUMAN REPRODUCTION</b> .....	<b>149</b>
A. <i>Types of Human Biological Materials</i> .....	<b>149</b>
B. <i>Collection of Human Biological Materials</i> .....	<b>150</b>
C. <i>Consent and Secondary Use of Identifiable Human Biological             Materials for Research Purposes</i> .....	<b>152</b>
D. <i>Storage and Banking of Human Biological Materials</i> .....	<b>154</b>
E. <i>Research Involving Materials Related to Human Reproduction</i> .....	<b>156</b>

**CHAPTER 13** ..... 161

**HUMAN GENETIC RESEARCH** ..... 161

- A. *Application of Core Principles to Genetic Research* ..... 161
- B. *Plans for Handling Information Revealed through Genetic Research*. 162
- C. *Genetic Counselling* ..... 164
- D. *Genetic Research Involving Families* ..... 164
- E. *Genetic Research Involving Communities* ..... 165
- F. *Genetic Material Banks* ..... 165
- G. *Gene Transfer* ..... 166





# INTRODUCTION

1 The *Tri-Council Policy Statement: Ethical Conduct for Research Involving Humans* (TCPS  
2 or the Policy) is a joint policy of Canada's three federal research agencies – the Canadian  
3 Institutes of Health Research, the Natural Sciences and Engineering Research Council of  
4 Canada and the Social Sciences and Humanities Research Council of Canada (the  
5 Agencies).

6 This Policy expresses the Agencies' continuing commitment to the people of Canada to  
7 promote the ethical conduct of research involving human participants. It has been informed,  
8 in part, by leading international ethics norms, all of which may help, in some measure, to  
9 guide the conduct of human research in Canada and by Canadian researchers abroad.

10 This edition represents the first substantive changes to the Policy since its adoption in 1998.  
11 It is a major revision, reflecting over a decade of experience with this Policy by the  
12 research community, applying it in response to existing and emerging ethical issues and  
13 new areas of research. It also distills the experience of the Interagency Advisory Panel on  
14 Research Ethics, which was created in 2001 primarily to steward the evolution and  
15 interpretation of this Policy, and to provide the Agencies with independent advice on issues  
16 related to the ethics of human research. This edition, which replaces the original TCPS,  
17 draws on the advice provided to the Panel by its working groups and committees. As well,  
18 it reflects the significant and valuable input from the research community and all those who  
19 provided feedback on the draft that the Panel circulated publicly, in December 2008.

## 20 **Mandate of the Agencies**

21 The people of Canada, through Acts of Parliament<sup>1</sup> have created and funded the Agencies  
22 to promote and assist research within their respective legislative mandates. In discharging  
23 their mandates, the Agencies wish to promote research that is conducted according to the  
24 highest ethical standards. The Agencies have therefore adopted this Policy as a benchmark  
25 for the ethical conduct for research involving human participants. As a condition of  
26 funding, the Agencies require that researchers and their institutions apply the ethical  
27 principles and the articles of this Policy and be guided by the applications to the articles.

## 28 **Compliance with the Policy**

29 To be eligible to receive and administer research funds from the Agencies, institutions must  
30 agree to comply with a number of Agency policies set out as schedules to a Memorandum  
31 of Understanding (MOU) between the Agencies and institutions. (See Memorandum of  
32 Understanding on the Roles and Responsibilities in the Management of Federal Grants and  
33 Awards at [www.nserc-crsng.gc.ca/NSERC-CRSNG/Politiques-Politiques/MOURoles-  
34 ProtocolRoles/index\\_eng.asp](http://www.nserc-crsng.gc.ca/NSERC-CRSNG/Politiques-Politiques/MOURoles-ProtocolRoles/index_eng.asp)). This Policy is Schedule 2 to that MOU. Institutions must  
35 therefore ensure that research conducted under their auspices adhere to this Policy.  
36 Researchers are expected, as a condition of funding, to adhere to the TCPS.

37 In addition to this Policy on the ethics of human research, institutions and their researchers  
38 must adhere to the other policies referenced in the MOU, which include policies on  
39 research integrity, peer review and conflicts of interest in research<sup>2</sup>.

40 Organizations and entities not party to the MOU are welcome to adopt this Policy to guide  
41 the ethical aspects of the design, review and conduct of human research. Since the adoption  
42 of the original Policy in 1998, many bodies in Canada and abroad have adopted, adapted  
43 and been guided by this document. The Agencies hope that this Policy will continue to  
44 serve as a model and guide for the ethical conduct of human research.

45 The Agencies recognize that considerations around the ethical conduct of human research  
46 are complex and continually evolving. We therefore welcome comments and discussion,  
47 and commit to the continued evolution of this document.

#### 48 **Endnotes**

---

<sup>1</sup> See *Canadian Institutes of Health Research Act*, Statutes of Canada, 2000, Chapter 6; *Natural Sciences and Engineering Research Council Act*, Revised Statutes of Canada, 1985, Chapter N-21; *Social Sciences and Humanities Research Council Act*, Revised Statutes of Canada, 1985, Chapter S-12.

<sup>2</sup> Schedules 4, 6 and 14, respectively.

# Chapter 1

49

50

## ETHICS FRAMEWORK

### 51 **A. The Importance of Research and Research Ethics**

52 The search for knowledge about ourselves and the world around us is a fundamental human  
53 endeavour. Research is a natural extension of this desire to understand and to improve the  
54 world in which we live.

55 The scope of research is vast. On the purely physical side, it ranges from seeking to  
56 understand the origins of the universe down to the fundamental nature of matter. At the  
57 analytic level, it covers mathematics, logic and metaphysics. Research involving humans  
58 ranges widely, including attempts to understand the broad sweep of history, the workings of  
59 the human body and the body politic, the nature of human interactions and the impact of  
60 nature on humans – the list is as boundless as the human imagination. For the purposes of  
61 this Policy, research is defined as an undertaking designed to extend knowledge through a  
62 disciplined inquiry or systematic investigation.

63 There can be no doubt that research has greatly enriched and improved our lives. A  
64 fundamental premise of this Policy is that research can benefit human society. In order to  
65 maximize the benefits of research, researchers must have certain freedoms. These freedoms  
66 include freedom of inquiry and the right to disseminate the results of that inquiry, freedom  
67 to challenge conventional thought and freedom from institutional censorship. Collectively,  
68 these are generally referred to as “academic freedom.” Along with these freedoms comes  
69 the responsibility to make sure that research involving human participants meets high  
70 ethical standards that respect and protect the research participants.

71 Research is a step into the unknown. Because it seeks to understand something not yet  
72 revealed, research often entails risks to research participants and others. These risks can be  
73 trivial or profound, physical or psychological, individual or social. History offers  
74 unfortunate examples where research participants have been needlessly and at times  
75 profoundly harmed by research, sometimes even dying as a result. Ethical principles and  
76 guidelines play an important role in advancing the pursuit of knowledge while protecting  
77 and respecting human participants in order to try to prevent such occurrences.

78 People have also been gratified and have had their lives enriched by their participation in  
79 research, either because they may have benefited directly or because their participation has  
80 contributed to the expansion of knowledge. Given the fundamental importance of research  
81 and of human participation in research, we must do all that we can as a society to ensure  
82 that research is conducted in an ethical manner so as to build public confidence and trust.  
83 By promoting and guiding the ethical conduct of research involving humans, this Policy  
84 seeks to contribute tangibly to these goals.

85 No single document can provide definitive answers to all ethical issues that may arise in an  
86 undertaking as complex as research involving humans. This Policy aims to assist those who  
87 use it – researchers, sponsors, members of research ethics boards (REBs), research  
88 participants and the public – to identify ethical issues in the design, conduct and oversight  
89 of research and to point the way to arriving at reasoned and ethical responses to these  
90 issues.

## 91 **B. Core Principles**

92 Respect for human dignity has been an underlying value of the *Tri-Council Policy*  
93 *Statement: Ethical Conduct for Research Involving Humans* (TCPS or the Policy) since its  
94 inception. Despite clear recognition of its centrality in research ethics, the term lends itself  
95 to a variety of definitions and interpretations that make it challenging to apply.

96 Respect for human dignity requires that research involving humans be conducted in a  
97 manner that is sensitive to the inherent worth of all human beings and the respect and  
98 consideration that they are due. In this Policy, respect for human dignity is expressed  
99 through three core principles – respect for persons, concern for welfare, and justice. These  
100 core principles transcend disciplinary boundaries and therefore, are relevant to the full  
101 range of research covered by this Policy.<sup>1</sup>

102 **Article 1.1** The guidelines in this Policy are based on the following three core  
103 principles:

- 104           ▪       Respect for Persons
- 105           ▪       Concern for Welfare
- 106           ▪       Justice

107 These principles are complementary and interdependent. How they apply and the weight to  
108 be accorded to each will depend on the nature and context of the research being undertaken.  
109 Specific applications are addressed in the following chapters.

### 110 **Respect for Persons**

111 Respect for persons recognizes the intrinsic value of human beings and the respect and  
112 consideration that they are due. It encompasses the treatment of persons involved in  
113 research directly as participants and those who are participants because their data, or human  
114 biological or reproductive materials are used in research. Respect for persons incorporates  
115 the dual moral obligations to respect autonomy and to protect those with developing,  
116 impaired or diminished autonomy.

117 Autonomy includes the ability to deliberate about a decision and to act based on that  
118 deliberation. Respecting autonomy means giving due deference to a person’s judgement  
119 and ensuring that they are free to choose without interference. Autonomy is not exercised in  
120 isolation but is influenced by a person’s various connections to family, to community, and  
121 to cultural, social, linguistic, religious and other groups. Likewise, a person’s decisions can  
122 have an impact on any of these.

123 An important mechanism for respecting participants' autonomy in research is the  
124 requirement to seek their free and informed consent. This requirement reflects the  
125 commitment that participation in research, including participation through the use of one's  
126 data, or biological or reproductive materials, should be a matter of choice and that, to be  
127 meaningful, the choice must be informed. An informed choice is one that is based on as  
128 complete an understanding as is reasonably possible of the purpose of the research, what it  
129 entails, and its risks and potential benefits, both to the participant and to others.

130  
131 Certain factors may diminish a person's ability to exercise their autonomy, such as  
132 inadequate information or understanding for deliberation, or a lack of freedom to act due to  
133 controlling influences or coercion. Such constraints may include the fear of alienating those  
134 in positions of authority, such as professional or personal caregivers, researchers, leaders,  
135 larger groups or a community to which one belongs. Other constraints may consist of  
136 barriers to accessing resources or knowledge outside the research context. Efforts should be  
137 made to eliminate or mitigate such constraints on autonomy where possible. However, in  
138 certain research contexts, incomplete disclosure of relevant information or deception may  
139 be necessary for the successful conduct of the research. (See Chapter 3, Section B for  
140 guidance on the ethical use of partial disclosure and deception).

141 Some people may be incapable of exercising autonomy because of immaturity, illness or  
142 certain mental health issues. While autonomy may be considered a necessary condition for  
143 participation in research, involving those who lack capacity can be valuable, just and even  
144 necessary. For those potential research participants, additional measures are needed to  
145 protect their interests and to ensure that their wishes (to the extent that these are known),  
146 are respected. These measures will generally include seeking consent from an authorized  
147 third party who is entrusted to make decisions on behalf of the prospective participant,  
148 based on knowledge of that person and their wishes or, if such wishes are unknown,  
149 consideration of their welfare. Even when the requirements of free and informed consent  
150 cannot be met, respect for persons requires involving the vulnerable person in decision-  
151 making where possible. This may include asking about their feelings regarding  
152 participation and/or for their assent. Where it is foreseeable that a participant may lose  
153 capacity during a research project, such as when studying dementia, it may be appropriate  
154 to ask research participants to express their preferences and ensure that they have  
155 authorized a trusted person to make decisions on their behalf should they lose the capacity  
156 to provide ongoing consent. (See Article 3.11 for guidance on research directives for  
157 individuals who lack capacity).

## 158 **Concern for Welfare**

159 Welfare is a holistic concept that refers to how a person or group is faring. The welfare of a  
160 person is the quality of that person's experience of life in all its aspects. Welfare is  
161 constituted of the impact on persons of such factors as their physical, mental and spiritual  
162 health, as well as their physical, economic and social circumstances. Thus, determinants of  
163 welfare can include housing, employment, security, family life, community membership,  
164 and social participation, among other aspects of life. Other contributing factors to welfare  
165 are privacy and the control of information about the person, and the treatment of human  
166 biological and reproductive materials according to the expressed or reasonably expected  
167 wishes of the person who was the source of the information or materials. A person or  
168 group's welfare is also affected by the welfare of those who are important to them. Harm

169 includes any negative effects on welfare, broadly construed. (For the relationship between  
170 risk and harm, see Chapter 2, Section B).

171 Concern for welfare means that researchers and REBs should aim to protect the welfare of  
172 participants, and, in some circumstances, to promote that welfare. To do so, researchers and  
173 REBs must ensure that participants are not exposed to unnecessary risks. Researchers and  
174 REBs must attempt to minimize the risks associated with answering any given research  
175 question. They should attempt to achieve the best possible balance of risks and potential  
176 benefits in a proposed research study. Then, in keeping with the principle of respect for  
177 persons, participants or authorized third parties make the final judgement about the  
178 acceptability of this balance to them.

179 The welfare of groups can also be affected by research. Groups may benefit from the  
180 knowledge gained from the research, but they may also suffer from stigmatization,  
181 discrimination or damage to reputation. Engagement during the design process with groups  
182 whose welfare may be affected by the research can help to clarify the potential impact of  
183 the research and indicate where any negative impact on welfare can be minimized.  
184 Researchers must also consider the risks and potential benefits of their research and the  
185 knowledge it might generate for the welfare of society as a whole. Where research on  
186 individuals may affect the welfare of a group(s), the weight given to the group's welfare  
187 will depend on the nature of the research being undertaken and the individuals or group in  
188 question. This consideration does not imply, however, that the welfare of a group should be  
189 given priority over the welfare of individuals.

## 190 **Justice**

191 Justice refers to the obligation to treat people fairly and equitably. Fairness entails treating  
192 all people with equal respect and concern. Equity requires distributing the benefits and  
193 burdens of research participation in such a way that no segment of the population is unduly  
194 burdened by the harms of research or denied the benefits of the knowledge generated from  
195 it.

196 Treating people fairly and equitably does not always mean treating people in the same way.  
197 Differences in treatment or distribution are justified when there are morally relevant  
198 differences between persons or groups. One important difference that must be considered  
199 for fairness and equity is vulnerability. Vulnerability is often caused by limited capacity or  
200 limited access to social goods, such as rights, opportunities and power. Vulnerable persons  
201 or groups have traditionally included children, the elderly, prisoners, those with mental  
202 health issues, and those with diminished capacity for self-determination. Ethnic and racial  
203 minorities and those who are institutionalized are other examples of groups who have, at  
204 times, been treated unfairly and inequitably in research or have been excluded from  
205 research opportunities. In order to treat vulnerable or marginalized persons or groups justly,  
206 they may need to be afforded special protections.

207 The recruitment process, both of participants who may become directly involved in  
208 research and those who participate as the source of information, or biological or  
209 reproductive materials to be used in research, is an important component of the fair and  
210 equitable conduct of research. Participants should be chosen based on inclusion criteria that  
211 are justified by the research question and not because they are easy to access or manipulate.

212 In addition, inequity is created when particular groups fail to receive fair benefits of  
213 research or when groups, or their data, or biological or reproductive materials, are excluded  
214 from research arbitrarily or for reasons unrelated to the research question.

215 An important threat to justice is the imbalance of power that often exists in the relationship  
216 between researcher and participant. Participants will generally not understand the research  
217 in the same way and in the same depth as does the researcher. Historically, there have been  
218 instances in which this power imbalance has been abused, with resulting harm to  
219 participants.

## 220 **Summary**

221 The respectful treatment that flows from the application of these principles can help to  
222 engender the trust of participants, as well as of the public, which is integral to the research  
223 process. Researchers should also consider the implications of the core principles for sharing  
224 the benefits of the research.

225 In summary, the importance of research and the need to ensure the ethical conduct of  
226 research requires both researchers and REB members to navigate a sometimes difficult  
227 course between insufficient protection and overprotection of research participants. The  
228 three core principles that express the value of human dignity provide the compass for that  
229 journey.

## 230 **C. How to Apply this Policy**

### 231 **Proportionate review**

232 Proportionality is the approach to ethics review recommended throughout this Policy. (See  
233 in particular Articles 2.9 and 6.12). This Policy aims to strike an appropriate balance  
234 between recognizing the potential benefits of research and the need to protect participants  
235 from research-related harms, broadly construed. Given that research involving humans  
236 covers the full spectrum from minimal to significant risks, a crucial element of the  
237 approach laid out in this Policy is to ensure that the degree of scrutiny applied to ethics  
238 review is proportionate to the risks presented by the research. A reduced level of scrutiny of  
239 a research project with minimal risks does not imply a lower level of adherence to the core  
240 principles. Rather, the intention is to reduce unnecessary impediments and facilitate the  
241 progress of ethical research.

### 242 **Research Ethics and Law**

243 In addition to the principles and guidelines in this Policy, researchers are responsible for  
244 ascertaining and complying with all applicable legal and regulatory requirements with  
245 respect to consent and the protection of privacy of research participants. (See Chapter 5).  
246 These legal and regulatory requirements may vary depending on the jurisdiction in Canada  
247 in which the research is being conducted and who is funding and/or conducting the  
248 research, and may be comprised of constitutional, statutory, regulatory, common law,  
249 and/or international or legal requirements of jurisdictions outside of Canada. Where the  
250 research is considered to be a governmental activity, for example, standards for protecting

251 privacy flowing from the Canadian Charter of Rights and Freedoms and federal privacy  
252 legislation and regulatory requirements would apply.

253 The law affects and regulates the standards and conduct of research involving humans in a  
254 variety of ways, such as privacy, confidentiality, intellectual property, the capacity of research  
255 participants as well as in many other areas. Human rights legislation prohibits discrimination  
256 on a variety of grounds. In addition, most documents on research ethics prohibit  
257 discrimination and recognize equal treatment as fundamental. REBs should also respect the  
258 spirit of the Canadian Charter of Rights and Freedoms, particularly the sections dealing with  
259 life, liberty and the security of the person as well as those involving equality and  
260 discrimination.

261 Researchers may face situations where they experience a tension between the requirements of  
262 law and the guidance of ethical principles. In such situations, researchers should strive to  
263 comply with the law while complying with ethical principles. Researchers should consult with  
264 colleagues, the REB or any relevant professional body to help resolve any conflicts between  
265 law and ethics, and guide an appropriate course of action. This may include the institution or  
266 professional association providing the researcher with access to legal advice, if needed.

267 This legal context for research involving humans is constantly evolving and varies from  
268 jurisdiction to jurisdiction. For this reason, REBs and researchers should be aware of  
269 applicable laws to identify legal issues that may occur in the conduct of research. REBs may  
270 satisfy this obligation through expertise among their members or through wider consultation.  
271 The researcher may seek independent legal advice where necessary.

### 272 **The perspective of the participant**

273 In designing and conducting research or reviewing the ethics of research, researchers and  
274 REBs must be mindful of the perspective of the participant. It may be necessary to consider  
275 the context – social, economic, cultural or other – that shapes the participant’s life, to  
276 properly evaluate the implications of the research in terms of the core principles.

### 277 **Appropriate expertise for review**

278 It is also important that ethics review be appropriate to the disciplines, fields of research  
279 and methodologies of the research being reviewed. This means that REBs must understand  
280 the discipline and methodology under review and be able to assess the research on its own  
281 terms. This Policy provides more direction concerning appropriate expertise in Articles 6.4  
282 and 6.5.

### 283 **Interpreting this Policy**

284 This Policy contains both guidance for the interpretation of the principles of research ethics,  
285 as well as a number of mandatory requirements for researchers, institutions and members of  
286 REBs. Mandatory provisions are signalled by the use of the term “shall.” Guidance for the  
287 interpretation of the core principles are generally indicated by use of the term “should.”

288 Evaluating the ethics of human research is not, and cannot be, an exact science. The  
289 interpretation and application of the articles and principles to particular circumstances will



290 always be a part of the exercise. The articles in this Policy are intended to provide  
291 guidance, and in some cases, to set out certain requirements. The application sections are  
292 intended to supplement the articles with further explanation and examples. While they  
293 cannot guarantee identical decisions across REBs, they can ensure that researchers and  
294 REBs employing this Policy are operating within the same parameters and taking into  
295 account the same considerations as they design and evaluate human research.

296 At the end of certain chapters, a section entitled “References” provides links to documents  
297 that contain further guidance on specific topics addressed in the chapter. These references  
298 are not meant to be exhaustive, but are offered to assist the reader who wishes to explore  
299 certain topics in greater detail.

300 This Policy will continue to evolve in response to the emerging needs and suggestions of all  
301 those whom this Policy is intended to serve, including the research community, participants  
302 and the public.

### 303 **Definitions**

304 The definitions provided in this Policy are intended specifically and solely for the purposes  
305 of this Policy.

### 306 **Endnote**

---

<sup>1</sup> The three core principles incorporate within them the eight principles set out in the 1998 TCPS. Respect for human dignity is expressed through the three core principles. Respect for free and informed consent and respect for vulnerable persons are both reflected in the principle of Respect for Persons, while respect for vulnerable persons is also reflected in the principle of Justice. Respect for privacy and confidentiality is an element of Concern for Welfare. Respect for Justice and Inclusiveness is covered in the core principle of Justice. Balancing Harms and Benefits, Minimizing Harm and Maximizing Benefit are in fact not principles, but are the means by which the principle of Concern for Welfare is put into effect. Each of these elements is addressed in greater detail in a chapter or section of this Policy.

By using these broader and more encompassing core principles, this Policy seeks to provide a more focused framework for the ethical guidance that follows. It is also a framework that harmonizes with other national and international ethics policies.



# Chapter 2

## SCOPE AND APPROACH

307

308

309 The purpose of this Policy, as set out in Chapter 1, is to establish principles to guide the  
310 design, conduct and review of research involving human participants. This chapter outlines the  
311 scope of application of the Policy and the approach to ethics review that flows from the core  
312 principles – respect for persons, concern for welfare, and justice. It sets out the preferred  
313 approach to ethics review by a research ethics board (REB) – a proportionate approach, which  
314 tailors the level of scrutiny by an REB to the level of risk presented by the research, both at  
315 the stage of the initial review and throughout the period the research is active, to ensure the  
316 continued ethical acceptability of research. The establishment, governance, jurisdiction,  
317 composition and operational issues related to the functioning of REBs are addressed in  
318 Chapter 6.

### 319 **A. Scope of Ethics Review**

#### 320 **Research Requiring REB Review**

321 The following article defines the general categories of research that require REB review in  
322 accordance with this Policy, subject to the exceptions set out further on in this Policy.

323 **Article 2.1** The following requires ethics review and approval by an REB before the  
324 research commences:

325 (a) research involving living human participants;

326 (b) research involving human biological materials, as well as human embryos,  
327 fetuses, fetal tissue, reproductive materials and stem cells.

328 **Application** The scope of this Policy is restricted to the review of the ethical conduct of  
329 research involving humans. The scope of REB review is limited to those  
330 activities defined as “research” in this Policy, involving “human participants”  
331 as defined in this Policy.

332 For the purposes of this Policy, “research” is defined as an undertaking  
333 intended to extend knowledge through a disciplined inquiry or systematic  
334 investigation.

335 A determination that research is the intended purpose of the undertaking is  
336 key for differentiating activities that require review by an REB and those  
337 that do not.

338 For the purposes of this Policy, “human participants” (also referred to as “research

339 participants,” or simply, “participants”) are those individuals whose data or  
340 responses to interventions, stimuli, or questions by the researcher are relevant to  
341 answering the research question.

342 Human participants are unique among the many parties involved in research,  
343 because they bear the primary risks of the research. These individuals are often  
344 referred to as “research subjects.” This Policy prefers the term “participant,”  
345 because it better reflects the spirit behind the core principles – that individuals who  
346 choose to participate in research play a more active role than the term “subject”  
347 conveys. As well, it reflects the range of research covered by this Policy, and the  
348 varied degree of involvement by participants that different types of research offer.  
349 The core principles of this Policy – respect for persons, concern for welfare, and  
350 justice – help to shape the relationship between researchers and research  
351 participants.

352 Where researchers seek to collect, use, share and access different types of  
353 information or data about research participants, they are expected to  
354 determine whether the information or data proposed in research is  
355 identifiable or non-identifiable. Privacy concerns are strongest in regard to  
356 information that identifies a specific individual. For the purposes of this  
357 Policy, information is identifiable if it, alone or when combined with other  
358 information available to the person who receives it, can reasonably be  
359 expected to identify an individual. The term “personal information”  
360 generally denotes identifiable information about an individual. For further  
361 details about the types of information and the spectrum of identifiability,  
362 refer to Section A in Chapter 5 of this Policy.

363 In some cases, research may involve interaction with individuals who are not  
364 themselves the focus of the research in order to obtain information. For  
365 example, one may collect information from authorized personnel in the  
366 ordinary course of their employment about organizations, policies,  
367 procedures, professional practices or statistical reports. Such individuals are  
368 not considered research participants for the purposes of this Policy.

369 For the purposes of this Policy, human biological materials include tissues,  
370 organs, blood, plasma, skin, serum, DNA, RNA, proteins, cells, hair, nail  
371 clippings, urine, saliva, and other body fluids. Embryo means a human  
372 organism during the first 56 days of its development following fertilization or  
373 creation, excluding any time during which its development has been  
374 suspended, and includes any cell derived from such an organism that is used  
375 for the purpose of creating a human being. Fetus means a human organism  
376 during the period of its development beginning on the 57<sup>th</sup> day following  
377 fertilization or creation, excluding any time during which its development has  
378 been suspended, and ending at birth. Fetal tissue includes membranes,  
379 placenta, umbilical cord, amniotic fluid and other tissue that contains genetic  
380 information about the fetus. Human reproductive materials mean a sperm,  
381 ovum or other human cell or a human gene, and includes a part of any of  
382 them. Further details on the above are provided in Chapter 12 of this Policy.

383 Where in doubt about the applicability of this Policy to a particular research  
384 project, the researcher shall seek the opinion of the REB. The REB makes  
385 the final decision on exceptions from ethics review.

386 **Research Exempt from REB Review**

387 Some research is exempt from REB review where protections are available by other means. This  
388 Policy allows the following exemptions from the requirement for REB review, as outlined below.

389 **Article 2.2** Research that relies exclusively on publicly available information does not  
390 require REB review when:

391 (a) the information is legally accessible to the public and appropriately  
392 protected by law; or,

393 (b) the information is publicly accessible and there is no reasonable expectation  
394 of privacy.

395 **Application** For the purposes of this Policy, publicly available information is any existing  
396 stored documentary material, records or publications, which may or may not  
397 include identifiable information, and that the law treats as publicly accessible  
398 or legally accessible to the public with appropriate protections.

399 Some types of information are legally accessible to the public in a certain form  
400 and for a certain purpose, often specified by law or regulations. For example,  
401 registries of deaths, court judgements, or public archives and publicly available  
402 statistics (e.g. Statistics Canada public use files). All publicly available  
403 archives (national, provincial or municipal) have policies governing access to  
404 their records. An archival record or database that is subject to restrictions, for  
405 example those under access to information and privacy legislation or  
406 contractual restrictions imposed by the donor of the records, may nevertheless  
407 be considered publicly available for the purposes of this Policy.

408 To the extent that researchers use this information that is publicly available or  
409 legally made publicly accessible REB review is not required. Exemption from  
410 REB review is based on the “exclusive” reliance of research on the publicly  
411 available information, and where the information is legally accessible to the  
412 public a legally designated custodian/steward appropriately guards this  
413 information and protects its privacy and proprietary interests.

414 REB review is also not required where research uses exclusively publicly  
415 available information that may contain identifiable information, and for  
416 which there is no reasonable expectation of privacy. For example,  
417 identifiable information may be disseminated in the public domain through  
418 print or electronic publications, film, audio, or digital recordings, press  
419 accounts, official publications of private or public institutions, artistic  
420 installations, exhibitions, or literary events freely open to the public, or  
421 publications accessible in public libraries. Research that is non-intrusive,  
422 does not involve direct interaction between the researcher and individuals

423 through the Internet medium, is not required to obtain REB review. Cyber-  
424 material such as documents, records, performances, online archival materials  
425 or published third-party interviews to which the public is given uncontrolled  
426 access on the Internet for which there is no expectation of privacy is  
427 considered to be publicly available information.

428 Exemption from REB review is based on the information being accessible in  
429 the public domain, and that the individuals to whom the information refers  
430 have no reasonable expectation of privacy. Information contained in publicly  
431 accessible material may, however, be subject to copyright and/or intellectual  
432 property rights protections or dissemination restrictions imposed by the legal  
433 entity controlling the information.

434 There are, however, publicly accessible digital sites where there is a  
435 reasonable expectation of privacy. When accessing identifiable information  
436 in publicly accessible digital sites, such as Internet chatrooms, and self-help  
437 groups with restricted membership, the privacy expectation of contributors  
438 of these sites is much higher. Researchers shall submit their proposal for  
439 REB review. (See Articles 10.3 and 10.4).

440 Where data linkage of different sources of publicly available information is  
441 involved, it could give rise to new forms of identifiable information that would  
442 raise issues of privacy and confidentiality when used in research, and would  
443 therefore require REB review. (See Article 5.7).

444 Where in doubt about the applicability of this article to their research,  
445 researchers should consult their REBs.

446 **Article 2.3** REB review is not required for research involving the observation of people  
447 in public places where:

- 448 (a) it does not involve any intervention staged by the researcher or direct  
449 interaction with the individuals or groups;  
450 (b) it does not involve collecting personal information that will be  
451 disseminated through photographic, film or video footage in the research  
452 results; and  
453 (c) where individuals or groups targeted for observation have no reasonable  
454 expectation of privacy.

455 **Application** For the purposes of this article, observational research is used to study acts  
456 or behaviour in a natural environment. It does not refer to observational  
457 methods used in epidemiological studies.

458 When designing their research, researchers shall pay attention to the  
459 environment in which observation takes place, the expectation of privacy  
460 that individuals in public places might have and the means of recording  
461 observations. Researchers shall also determine whether the use of this  
462 information in the dissemination of research results (e.g. through  
463 publications, photographs or video footage of groups or particular

- 464 individuals) will allow the identification of individuals observed in public  
465 places. When in doubt, researchers should consult the REB prior to the  
466 conduct of such research.
- 467 Refer to Chapter 10, Articles 10.3 and 10.4, that address the use of  
468 observational methods in qualitative research, including projects involving  
469 digital data collection on the Web.
- 470 **Article 2.4** REB review is not required for research that relies exclusively on secondary  
471 use of anonymous information.
- 472 **Application** Secondary use refers to the use in research of information originally  
473 collected for a purpose other than the current research purpose. For the  
474 purposes of this Policy, anonymous information is a form of non-identifiable  
475 information that never had identifiers associated with it (e.g. anonymous  
476 surveys).
- 477 Rapid technological advances facilitate identification of information and make  
478 it harder to achieve anonymity. Where the researcher seeks data linkage of two  
479 or more anonymous sets of information and there is a reasonable prospect that  
480 this can generate identifiable information, then REB review is required.
- 481 Guidance related to other categories of identifiable and non-identifiable  
482 information and secondary use of identifiable information is provided in  
483 Chapter 5.
- 484 **Activities Not Requiring REB Review**
- 485 The following distinguishes research requiring REB review from activities that have  
486 traditionally employed similar methods and techniques. Such activities are not considered  
487 “research” as defined in this Policy, and do not require REB review. Activities outside the  
488 scope of research subject to REB review, as defined in this Policy, may still raise ethical  
489 issues that would benefit from careful consideration by a person or a body capable of  
490 providing some independent guidance, other than an REB. These ethics resources may be  
491 based in professional or disciplinary associations, particularly where those associations  
492 have established best-practices guidelines for such activities in their discipline.
- 493 **Article 2.5** Quality assurance and quality improvement studies, program evaluation, and  
494 performance reviews or testing within normal educational requirements when  
495 used exclusively for program review, management or improvement purposes  
496 do not constitute research for the purposes of this Policy, and do not fall within  
497 the scope of REB review.
- 498 **Application** Article 2.5 refers to assessments of the performance of an organization or its  
499 employees or students, within the mandate of the organization or according to  
500 the terms and conditions of employment or training. Those activities are  
501 normally administered in the ordinary course of the operation of an  
502 organization where participation is required for example as a condition of  
503 employment in the case of staff performance reviews, or an evaluation in the

504 course of academic or professional training, student course evaluations, or data  
505 collection for internal or external organizational reports. Such activities do not  
506 normally follow the consent procedures outlined in this Policy.

507 Data collected from such activities but used later as part of a research project  
508 would be considered secondary use of information not originally intended for  
509 research. Refer to Section D of Chapter 5 for guidance concerning secondary  
510 use of identifiable information for research purposes.

511 **Article 2.6** Creative practice activities in and of themselves do not require REB review.

512 **Application** Creative practice is a process through which an artist makes or interprets a  
513 work or works of art. It may also include a study of the process of how a  
514 work of art is generated. Creative practice activities do not require review by  
515 an REB, but they may be governed by ethical practices established within  
516 the cultural sector.

517 Research that employs creative practice to obtain responses from human  
518 participants that will be analyzed to answer a research question, or to  
519 generate research questions is, however, subject to REB review.

## 520 **Relationship between Ethics Review and Scholarly Review**

521 **Article 2.7** As part of ethics review, the REB shall review the ethical implications of the  
522 methods and design of the research.

523 **Application** The primary test to be used by REBs in evaluating a research project should  
524 be ethical probity and, where appropriate, relevant disciplinary scholarly  
525 standards.

526 Traditions for scholarly review vary among disciplines or fields of research,  
527 including the stage at which scholarly review occurs, and this needs to be  
528 taken into account by REBs. The extent of the scholarly review that is  
529 required for biomedical research that does not involve more than minimal  
530 risk will vary according to the research being carried out. Research in the  
531 humanities and the social sciences that poses, at most, minimal risk shall not  
532 normally be required by the REB to be peer reviewed.

533 REBs should normally avoid duplicating previous professional peer-review  
534 assessments unless there is a good and defined reason to do so. Researchers  
535 have a role to play in demonstrating to their REB whether, when and how  
536 appropriate scholarly review has been or will be undertaken for their  
537 research. REBs may request that the researcher provides them with the full  
538 documentation of reviews already completed.

539 Where scholarly review is required,

- 540 ▪ an REB should consider what scholarly review has been applied to a  
541 particular research project (e.g. by a funder or sponsor, or for student



- 542 research by the research supervisor, or by a permanent peer review  
543 committee where it exists);
- 544     ▪ if the scholarly review has not yet been undertaken and is indicated by  
545 the relevant disciplinary tradition, the REB should consider the  
546 following mechanisms in satisfying itself that scholarly review of the  
547 research has been undertaken:
- 548     - establish an ad hoc independent peer review committee;
- 549     - if the REB has the necessary scholarly expertise, assume complete  
550 responsibility for the scholarly review. In assuming this  
551 responsibility, the REB should not be driven by factors such as  
552 personal biases or preferences, and should not reject proposals  
553 because they are controversial, challenge mainstream thought or  
554 offend powerful or vocal interest groups.

### 555 **REB Review Shall be Continuing**

556 **Article 2.8** REB review shall start with an initial review of research that falls within the  
557 scope of this Policy. Ethics review shall continue throughout the life of the  
558 project.

559 **Application** The primary goal of REB review is to ensure the ethical acceptability of  
560 research involving humans that falls within the scope of this Policy.  
561 Following the initial review, the REB review shall continue to ensure that all  
562 stages of a research project are ethically acceptable in accordance with the  
563 principles of this Policy.

564 Continuing ethics review by an REB provides those involved in the research  
565 process (in particular, researchers, REBs, and participants) with multiple  
566 opportunities to reflect on the ethical issues surrounding the research. This  
567 reflection can show whether the stated risks, or other unknown risks, were  
568 incurred and how they affected the individual and collective welfare of  
569 participants. This reflective practice is intended to enable both researchers  
570 and REBs to be more effective in protecting research participants in current  
571 and future research. This practice is especially important in new and  
572 emerging fields, where the ethical implications are not yet well understood.  
573 Here, reflection should involve a continuing dialogue between the  
574 participants, REBs and researchers, as appropriate, to enable the principles  
575 and practices surrounding research ethics to evolve.

576 In the conduct of their approved research, researchers shall report to their  
577 REB, in a timely manner, departures from the initially approved research,  
578 and events or issues that have ethical implications or that change the risk to  
579 participants.

580 Further details related to the application of continuing ethics review and the  
581 REB review of departures to approved research are outlined in Articles 6.14  
582 and 6.15.

583 **B. Approach to REB Review**

584 This section introduces the concepts of risks and potential benefits of research (including a  
585 definition of minimal risk), as well as their balance in the conduct and ethics review of  
586 research. It addresses the preferred approach where the degree of scrutiny applied to ethics  
587 review should be proportionate to the level of risk that the research presents.

588 **Concepts of Risks and Potential Benefits**

589 *Potential Benefits*

590 Research involving humans may produce benefits that positively affect the welfare of  
591 society as a whole through the advancements of knowledge, for future generations, for  
592 participants themselves or for other individuals. However, much research offers little or no  
593 direct benefit to participants. In most research, the primary benefits produced are for  
594 society and for the advancement of knowledge.

595 *Risks*

596 Because research is a step into the unknown, its undertaking can involve harms to research  
597 participants and to others. Harm is anything that has a negative effect on the welfare of  
598 participants, and the nature of the harm may take a social, behavioural, psychological,  
599 physical or economic form.

600 Risk is a function of the magnitude or seriousness of the harm and the probability that it  
601 will occur, whether to participants or third parties (as outlined below). A proper ethical  
602 analysis of research should consider both the risk and the available methods of mitigating  
603 the risk.

604 ▪ *The magnitude or seriousness of the harm*

605 Potential harms in research may span the spectrum from minimal (e.g. inconvenience  
606 of participation in research) through substantial (e.g. a major physical injury or an  
607 emotional trauma). Harms may be transient such as a temporary emotional reaction to  
608 a survey question, while other types of harm may be longer lasting, such as the loss of  
609 reputation following a breach of confidentiality. Research in certain disciplines, such  
610 as epidemiology, genetics, sociology or cultural anthropology, may present risks that  
611 go beyond the individual and may involve the interests of communities, societies or  
612 other defined groups.

613 ▪ *The probability of occurrence of the harm*

614 This refers to the likelihood of participants actually suffering the relevant harms. An  
615 assessment of such probability may be based on the researcher's past experience  
616 conducting such studies, or the review of existing publications that provide rates of  
617 the relevant harms in similar issues. And while researchers should attempt to estimate  
618 the occurrence of the relevant harms, this may be more difficult, or not possible for  
619 new or emerging areas of research where no prior experience, comparable research, or  
620 publications exist.

621 Certain accepted research paradigms bring inherent limitations to the prior identification of  
622 risk. For example, when research in the social sciences employs emergent design, the  
623 manner in which the study will proceed and any associated risks may be known only as the  
624 study unfolds. (See Chapters 3 and 10).

### 625 ***Minimal Risk***

626 Minimal risk research that falls within the scope of this Policy requires REB review. It is  
627 generally eligible for delegated review – described in Article 6.12.

628 For the purposes of this Policy, a “minimal risk” research is defined as research in which  
629 the probability and magnitude of possible harms implied by participation in the research is  
630 no greater than those encountered by the participant in those aspects of his or her everyday  
631 life that relate to the research.

632 In their assessment of the acceptable threshold of minimal risk, REBs have special ethical  
633 obligations to individuals or groups whose situation or circumstances makes them  
634 vulnerable in the context of a specific research project, and to those who live with relatively  
635 high levels of risk on a daily basis. Their inclusion in research should not exacerbate their  
636 vulnerability.

### 637 ***Balancing Risks and Potential Benefits***

638 The analysis, balance and distribution of risks and potential benefits are critical to the ethics  
639 of human research. The principle of concern for welfare of participants imposes an ethical  
640 obligation to design, assess and conduct research in a way that protects research  
641 participants from any unnecessary or avoidable risks. In their review, REBs should be  
642 concerned with an assessment that the potential research outcomes and potential benefits  
643 merit the risks.

644 Risks and potential benefits may be perceived differently by different individuals and  
645 groups in society. Researchers and REBs should take this into account in designing and  
646 reviewing research. They should also recognize that researchers and research participants  
647 may not always see the risks and potential benefits of a research project in the same way. In  
648 assessing risks and potential benefits for specific populations, researchers and REBs should  
649 understand the role of the culture, values and beliefs of the populations to be studied, as  
650 well as any guidelines that exist for conducting research with these populations. (See  
651 Chapters 8, 9 and 10). Researchers should demonstrate to their REBs that they have a  
652 reasonable understanding of the likely effects of their research on the population being  
653 studied. This could be demonstrated, for example, by referring to previous experience with  
654 conducting research with a similar population, or published research on the effects of that  
655 type of research on the population being studied, or the presence of a community advisory  
656 group where it exists.

657 REBs should also be aware that some research, particularly in the social sciences, when  
658 conducting critical assessments of, for example, political or corporate institutions, may be  
659 legitimately critical and/or opposed to the welfare of those who are the focus of the  
660 research, and may cause them some harm. Such research should be carried out according to  
661 professional standards of the relevant discipline(s) or field(s) of research, but it should not

662 be blocked through the use of risk-benefit analysis. In such cases, the balance of risks to  
663 those who are the focus of the research is mainly weighed against the potential benefit of  
664 new knowledge to society and the indirect benefits to the population to which the  
665 participant belongs.

666 **Article 2.9** The REB shall adopt a proportionate approach to ethics review such that the  
667 lower the level of risk, the lower the level of scrutiny; the higher the level of  
668 risk, the higher the level of scrutiny. The expertise involved in the ethics  
669 review process should be proportionate to the risk of research to participants.

670 **Application** While all research shall be reviewed in adherence with the core principles,  
671 proportionate review is intended to direct the most intensive scrutiny, time and  
672 resources, and correspondingly, the most protection, to the most ethically  
673 challenging research. A proportionate approach to ethics review starts with an  
674 assessment of the magnitude and probability of harms, and potential benefits  
675 inherent in the research. The REB should make this assessment in light of the  
676 context of the research – that is, elements of the research that may produce  
677 benefits or harms or otherwise have an impact on the ethics of research.

678 Both risks and potential benefits may span the spectrum from minimal through  
679 substantial. The concept of minimal risk (described above) provides a  
680 foundation for proportionate review. The various applications of the  
681 proportionate approach to REB review are addressed in Article 6.12.

## 682 **Risks to Researchers**

683 Risks in research are not limited to research participants. In their conduct of research,  
684 researchers themselves may be exposed to risks that may take many forms (e.g. injury,  
685 incarceration, etc.) Risks to researchers may become a safety concern, especially for  
686 student researchers who are at a learning stage regarding the conduct of research, and who  
687 may be subject to pressures from supervisors to conduct research in such unsafe situations.

688 While it is not a formal part of its responsibilities, an REB may raise concerns about the  
689 safety of student researchers as part of its communication to the student researchers, and to  
690 their supervisors. Based on the level of risk, the REB may consider flagging such concerns  
691 for review by an appropriate body within the institution.

# Chapter 3

692

693

## CONSENT

694 This chapter sets out the ethical requirements for consent in research involving humans.  
695 Throughout this Policy, the term “consent” means “free, informed and ongoing consent.” In  
696 general, participation should be based on consent that is voluntary, informed, and ongoing  
697 throughout the duration of the research. For the purpose of this Policy, “free” and “voluntary”  
698 are used interchangeably.

699 Respect for persons implies that individuals who participate in research should do so  
700 voluntarily, understanding the purpose of the research and its risks and potential benefits as fully  
701 as reasonably possible. Where a person has the capacity to understand this information, and the  
702 ability to act on it voluntarily, the decision to participate is generally seen as an expression of  
703 autonomy.

704 Equally, respect for persons implies that those who lack the capacity to decide for themselves  
705 should nevertheless have the opportunity to participate in research that may benefit themselves  
706 or others, through the intervention of authorized third parties who decide whether participation  
707 would be appropriate. For the purposes of this Policy, the term “authorized third party,” (also  
708 known as “authorized third party decision makers”) refers to any person with the necessary legal  
709 authority to make decisions on behalf of an individual who lacks the capacity to consent to  
710 participate or to continue to participate in a particular research project. These decisions involve  
711 considerations of welfare and justice.

712 Certain types of research require alternate processes for consent. These are also described in this  
713 chapter. Where elements of the consent process may need to be adapted to the requirements of a  
714 particular research project, the research ethics board (REB) can play an educational and  
715 consultative role in determining the appropriate process for seeking and maintaining consent.

716 The principal researcher is responsible for ensuring that the consent process is respected. This  
717 includes responsibility for the actions of the research team who are involved in the consent  
718 process.

719 In addition to this Policy, researchers are responsible for ensuring that all applicable legal and  
720 regulatory requirements with respect to consent are met. In some circumstances, researchers  
721 may have further legal obligations that may be determined in part by the nature of the research  
722 and the jurisdiction in which the research is being conducted.<sup>1</sup>

### 723 **A. General Principles**

#### 724 **Consent Shall Be Given Voluntarily**

725 **Article 3.1** (a) Consent shall be given voluntarily.

726 (b) Consent may be withdrawn at any time.

727 (c) If a participant withdraws consent, he or she can also request the  
728 withdrawal of his or her data or biological materials.

729 **Application** (a) The voluntariness of consent is important because it means that an  
730 individual has chosen to participate in research according to his or her own  
731 values, preferences and wishes.

732 The approach to recruitment is an important element in assuring voluntariness. In  
733 particular, how, when and where participants are approached and who recruits  
734 them are important elements in assuring (or undermining) voluntariness. In  
735 considering the voluntariness of consent, REBs and researchers should be  
736 cognizant of situations where undue influence, coercion, or the offer of incentives  
737 may undermine a participant's voluntariness to consent to participate in research.

738 *Undue Influence*

739 Undue influence and manipulation may arise when potential participants are  
740 recruited by individuals in a position of authority. The influence of power  
741 relationships on the voluntariness of consent should be judged from the  
742 perspective of prospective participants, since the individuals being recruited  
743 may feel constrained to follow the wishes of those who have some form of  
744 control over them (e.g. employer and employees, teachers and students,  
745 commanding officers and members of the military or correctional officers and  
746 prisoners). This control may be physical, psychological, financial, or  
747 professional, for example, and may involve offering some form of inducement  
748 or threatening some form of deprivation. In such situations, the control may  
749 place undue pressure on the prospective participants. At the extreme, there can  
750 be no voluntariness if consent is secured by the order of authorities.

751 REBs should also pay particular attention to elements of trust and dependency  
752 in relationship (e.g. between physician and patient or between professor and  
753 student). These relationships can impose undue influence on the individual in  
754 the position of dependence to participate in research projects. Any relationship  
755 of dependency, even a nurturing one, may give rise to undue influence, even if  
756 it is not applied overtly. There may be a greater risk of undue influence in  
757 situations of ongoing or significant dependency.

758 Pre-existing entitlements to care, education and other services should not be  
759 prejudiced by the decision of whether or not to participate in or to withdraw  
760 from a research project. Accordingly, for example, a physician should ensure  
761 that continued clinical care is not linked to research participation.

762 *Coercion*

763 Coercion is a more extreme form of undue influence, involving a threat of harm  
764 or punishment for failure to participate. Coercion would negate the  
765 voluntariness of a decision to participate or to remain in a research study.

766

*Incentives*

767

768

769

770

771

772

773

774

775

776

777

778

Incentives are anything offered to participants, monetary or otherwise, for participation in research (incentives differ from reimbursements and compensation for injury, which are discussed in Article 3.2[j] below). Because incentives are used to encourage participation in a research project, they are an important consideration in assessing voluntariness. Where incentives are offered to participants, they should not be so large or attractive as to constitute an inducement to take risks that one would otherwise not take. This is a particular consideration in the case of healthy volunteers for the early phases of clinical trials, as discussed in Article 11.6. The offer of incentives in some contexts may be perceived by potential participants as a way to gain favour or improve their situation. This may amount to undue inducement and thus negate the voluntary aspect of the consent of participants.

779

780

781

782

783

784

785

786

787

This policy neither recommends nor discourages the use of incentives. The onus is on the researcher to justify to the REB the use of a particular model and the level of incentives. In considering the possibility of undue influence in research involving financial or other incentives, researchers and REBs should be sensitive to issues such as the economic circumstances of those in the pool of prospective participants, the age and capacity of participants, the customs and practices of the community and the magnitude and probability of harms. (See Chapter 4, Section D). Guardians and authorized third parties should not receive incentives.

788

789

790

791

792

793

794

(b) To maintain the element of voluntariness, the participant shall be free to withdraw their consent to participate from the research at any time and need not offer any reason for doing so. In some cases, however, the physical practicalities of the study may prevent the actual withdrawal of the participant partway through – for example, if the study involves only a single intervention or the termination of the research procedure may compromise the safety of the participant.

795

796

797

798

799

The participant should not suffer any disadvantage or reprisal for withdrawing nor should any payment due prior to the point of withdrawal be withheld. If the study used a lump-sum incentive for participation, the participant is entitled to the entire amount. If a payment schedule is used, the participant should be paid in proportion to his or her participation.

800

801

802

803

804

805

806

(c) Once they have withdrawn their consent to participate, participants may request the withdrawal of their data or biological materials<sup>2</sup>. In some research studies, the withdrawal of data or biological materials may not be feasible – for example, when personal information is de-identified and added to a data pool. As part of the consent process, participants should be informed when they are entering a study that it may not be feasible to withdraw data or biological materials.

807 **Consent Shall Be Informed**

808 **Article 3.2** Researchers shall provide to prospective participants or authorized third parties  
809 full disclosure of all information necessary for making an informed decision to  
810 participate in a research project.

811 **Application** At the commencement of any process of consent, researchers or their qualified  
812 designated representatives shall provide prospective participants with the  
813 information set out in the following list, as appropriate to the particular  
814 research project. Not all the listed elements are required for all research.  
815 However, additional information may be required in particular types of  
816 research or under particular circumstances.

817 It is up to the researcher to explain to the REB why, in a particular project,  
818 some of the listed disclosure requirements do not apply. It is also up to the  
819 REB to consider whether all elements listed or additional elements are  
820 necessary in a given research project.

821 The information generally required for informed consent includes:

822 (a) information that the individual is being invited to participate in a research  
823 project;

824 (b) a statement of the research purpose in plain language – the identity of the  
825 researcher, the identity of the funder or sponsor, the expected duration  
826 and nature of participation, a description of research procedures, and an  
827 explanation of the responsibilities of the participant;

828 (c) a plain language description of reasonably foreseeable risks and potential  
829 benefits, both to the participants and in general, that may arise from  
830 research participation;

831 (d) an assurance that prospective participants:

832       ▪ are under no obligation to participate; are free to withdraw at any time  
833       without prejudice to pre-existing entitlements;

834       ▪ will be given, throughout the course of the research, in a timely  
835       manner, information that is relevant to their decision to continue or  
836       withdraw from participation; and

837       ▪ will be given information on the participant's right to request the  
838       withdrawal of data or biological materials including any limitations on  
839       the feasibility of that withdrawal;

840 (e) information concerning the possibility of commercialization of research  
841 findings, and the presence of any real or potential conflict of interests on  
842 the part of researchers, their institutions or sponsors;

843 (f) the measures to be undertaken for dissemination of research results and  
844 whether participants will be identified directly or indirectly;



- 845 (g) the identity of the qualified designated representative with contact  
846 information who can explain scientific or scholarly aspects of the  
847 research;
- 848 (h) information identifying the appropriate individual(s) with contact  
849 information outside the research team to contact regarding possible  
850 ethical issues in the research;
- 851 (i) an indication of who will have access to information collected on the  
852 identity of participants, descriptions of how confidentiality will be  
853 protected, and anticipated uses of data; and information on who may  
854 have a duty to disclose information collected and to whom;
- 855 (j) information on any payments, including incentives for  
856 participants, reimbursement for participation-related expenses and  
857 compensation for injury;
- 858 (k) a statement to the effect that, by consenting, participants have not  
859 waived any rights to legal recourse in the event of research-related  
860 harm; and
- 861 (l) in clinical trials, information on stopping rules and when researchers  
862 may withdraw participants.

863 For consent to be informed, prospective participants should have adequate  
864 time and opportunity to assimilate the information provided, pose any  
865 questions they may have and discuss and consider whether they will  
866 participate. The time required for this initial phase of the consent process will  
867 depend on such factors as the magnitude and probability of harms, the  
868 complexity of the information conveyed and the setting where the  
869 information is given.

870 The key to informed consent is that potential participants understand the  
871 information being conveyed to them by researchers. Researchers and REBs  
872 should consider how best to convey that information to facilitate  
873 understanding. For example, written documentation may be supplemented  
874 with visual aids or accompanied by video presentations.

875 When language barriers necessitate the use of an intermediary for  
876 communication between the research team and participants the researcher  
877 should use an intermediary who has the necessary language skills to ensure  
878 effective communication. (See Article 4.1).

879 Paragraphs (a) to (c) require researchers to clearly explain the nature and goals  
880 of the research and other essential information, in a manner that best promotes  
881 understanding on the part of potential participants.

882 Paragraph (b) requires disclosure of those who support a particular research  
883 project, through funding or sponsorship. It is unethical for researchers to engage  
884 in covert activities for intelligence, police or military purposes under the guise

885 of research. Conducting clandestine research or deliberately misrepresenting  
886 one's research goals and impact to research participants is a clear violation of  
887 this policy. There are circumstances where deception may be a legitimate part  
888 of the research. (See Article 3.7 and its application, Research Involving Partial  
889 Disclosure or Deception).

890 Paragraph (c) requires researchers to consider all reasonably foreseeable risks  
891 that may result from participation. For example, when research is conducted on  
892 an organization or a community, researchers should inform potential  
893 participants within that organization or community the extent to which the  
894 organization or community is collaborating with the research and any risk this  
895 may pose to the participant.

896 Paragraph (d) helps to ensure the effectiveness of Article 3.1 – that a  
897 prospective participant's choice to participate is voluntary. Paragraph (d) also  
898 supports the requirement that the consent process continue throughout the  
899 research.

900 Paragraph (e) aims at managing real or potential conflicts of interests.  
901 Researchers should separate, to the extent possible, their role as researcher from  
902 their roles as therapists, caregivers, teachers, advisors, consultants, supervisors,  
903 employers or the like. If a researcher is acting in dual roles, this fact must always  
904 be disclosed to the participant. Conflict of interests matters are further elaborated  
905 in Chapter 7.

906 Paragraph (f) requires that researchers provide a reasonable explanation of  
907 the measures to be undertaken to publish and otherwise disseminate the  
908 results of the research, to the extent that it is feasible and in a manner that is  
909 appropriate. Beyond the ethical obligation to do so in such areas as clinical  
910 trials, this requirement is grounded on the reasonable expectation of  
911 participants in research that the results will be published or otherwise  
912 disseminated in the public domain to advance societal knowledge (addressed  
913 further in Articles 11.12 and 11.13).

914 Paragraph (h) acknowledges that some institutions may decide either to name  
915 an ombudsman for research participants, or designate a resource person to  
916 handle queries, receive complaints, and transmit those complaints to the REB.  
917 This is a matter for institutions to determine.

918 Paragraph (i) touches on issues of privacy and confidentiality, and secondary  
919 use of data, which are addressed in Chapter 5.

920 Paragraph (j) ensures that participants are informed of the payments they will  
921 receive, if any, for their participation. Reimbursement for participation-related  
922 expenses is intended to ensure that participants are not put at a direct or indirect  
923 financial disadvantage for the time and inconvenience of participation in  
924 research. Direct expenses are costs incurred because of research participation  
925 (e.g. paying for transportation to or parking at the research site) while indirect  
926 expense refers to losses that arise from participation (e.g. taking unpaid leave  
927 from work). Participants should also be informed about any compensation they

928 may be entitled to for research-related injuries.

929 Paragraph (1) is intended to inform the prospective participant in clinical trials  
930 of circumstances under which the researcher may end the participant's  
931 involvement in a research project. Clinical trials have stopping rules –  
932 statistical points determined in advance, which, once reached, dictate that the  
933 trial must be terminated. As well, researchers may withdraw participants when  
934 the participants are not following the procedures of the clinical trial. These are  
935 discussed further in Chapter 11.

### 936 **Consent Shall be an Ongoing Process**

937 **Article 3.3** Consent shall be maintained throughout participation in the research.

938 **Application** Consent encompasses a process that begins with the initial contact and carries  
939 through to the end of – and sometimes beyond – the involvement of research  
940 participants in the project. Throughout the process, researchers have a continuing  
941 duty to provide participants and REBs information relevant to the participant's  
942 consent to participate in the research. The researcher has an ongoing ethical and  
943 legal obligation to bring to the participant's attention changes that have ethical  
944 implications or that may be germane to their continued participation in the  
945 research or to the particular circumstances of the participant. In particular,  
946 researchers should disclose changes to risks or potential benefits of the research.  
947 This gives the participant the opportunity to reconsider the basis for his or her  
948 consent in light of the new information.

### 949 **Incidental Findings**

950 **Article 3.4** Researchers have an obligation to disclose to the participant any material  
951 incidental findings discovered in the course of research.

952 **Application** “Incidental findings” is a term that describes unanticipated discoveries made in  
953 the course of research but that are outside the scope of the research. Material  
954 incidental findings are findings that have been interpreted as having significant  
955 welfare implications for the participant, whether health-related, psychological or  
956 social. If, in the course of research, material incidental findings are discovered,  
957 researchers have an obligation to inform the participant.

958 In some areas of research, such as medical and genetic research, there is a greater  
959 likelihood of material incidental findings. For research where material incidental  
960 findings are likely, researchers should develop a plan indicating how they will  
961 disclose such findings to participants and submit this plan to the REB. If there is  
962 uncertainty as to whether a research project warrants a plan, the researcher and  
963 REB can make such a determination on a case-by-case basis.

964 If researchers are unsure of how to interpret findings, or uncertain whether  
965 findings are material, they should consult with colleagues or refer to standards in  
966 the discipline. If researchers are unsure of the most appropriate method for  
967 disclosing material incidental findings to participants, they should consult with  
968 their REB or with colleagues. In some cases, incidental findings may trigger legal

969 reporting obligations – researchers should be aware of these obligations. (See  
970 Article 5.1).

### 971 **Consent Should Precede Collection of or Access to Research Data**

972 **Article 3.5** In general, research should begin only after the participants or their authorized  
973 third parties have provided their consent.

974 **Application** In keeping with the principle of respect for persons, participants should provide  
975 their consent prior to engaging in research. This is the clearest demonstration  
976 that their participation is based on consideration of the risks and potential  
977 benefits of the research and other principles in this Policy. There are exceptions  
978 to this general ethical requirement, however, set out below in Articles 3.7 and  
979 3.8.

980 This article does not apply to conversations that researchers may have with  
981 potential participants as part of the development of the design of their research.  
982 These preliminary conversations – including, for example, negotiations  
983 concerning the terms on which a researcher may engage with a particular  
984 community or group – do not in themselves constitute research and therefore  
985 do not require consent. (See Chapter 2, Article 6.11, Articles 9.3 to 9.6, and  
986 10.1).

### 987 **Critical Inquiry**

988 **Article 3.6** Permission is not required from an organization in order to conduct research on  
989 that organization.

990 **Application** Research in the form of critical inquiry, that is, the analysis of social structures  
991 or activities, public policies or other social phenomena, requires an adjustment  
992 in the assessment of consent. Where the goal of the research is to adopt a  
993 critical perspective with respect to an institution, organization or other entity,  
994 the fact that the object of the research may not endorse the research should not  
995 be a bar to the research receiving ethics approval. Where social sciences or  
996 humanities researchers seek knowledge that critiques or challenges the policies  
997 and practices of institutions, governments, interest groups or corporations may  
998 require that researchers not seek the organization's permission to proceed with  
999 the proposed research. If institutional approval were required, it is unlikely that  
1000 research could be conducted effectively on such matters as institutional sexual  
1001 abuse or a government's silencing of dissident scientists. Important knowledge  
1002 and insights from research would be forgone. Specific requirements pertain to  
1003 Aboriginal organizations, the details of which are discussed in detail in Articles  
1004 9.4 - 9.8.

1005 REBs should not prohibit research simply because the research is unpopular or  
1006 looked upon with disfavour by a community or organization, in Canada or  
1007 abroad. Similarly, REBs should not veto research on the grounds that the  
1008 government in place or its agents have not given approval for the research  
1009 project or have expressed a dislike of the researchers.

1010 However, individuals who are approached to participate in a research project  
1011 about their organization should be fully informed about the views of the  
1012 organization regarding the research, if these are known, and of the possible  
1013 consequences of participation. Researchers engaging in critical inquiry need to  
1014 be attentive to risks, both of stigmatization or breach of privacy, to those who  
1015 participate in research about their organization. In particular, potential  
1016 participants should be fully informed of the possible consequences of  
1017 participation.

1018 REBs should, however, legitimately concern themselves with the welfare of  
1019 research participants and the security of research materials in such  
1020 circumstances. When copies of field material are provided to participants in  
1021 situations in which participants are vulnerable to risks from third parties on  
1022 account of their participation, or in countries with authoritarian regimes,  
1023 researchers should concern themselves with commitments concerning  
1024 anonymity and confidentiality of participants to ensure that the human rights of  
1025 participants and the ethical principles set out in this Policy are not  
1026 compromised. In general, regardless of where the researchers conduct their  
1027 research, researchers and REBs should concern themselves with safeguarding  
1028 information while in transit. (See Articles 5.1 through 5.4).

## 1029 **B. Departures from General Principles of Consent**

### 1030 **Alteration and Waiver of Consent in Minimal Risk Research**

1031 **Article 3.7** The REB may approve a consent procedure that does not include or that alters  
1032 some or all of the elements of consent or may waive the requirement to seek  
1033 informed consent, provided that the REB finds and documents that all of the  
1034 following apply:

- 1035 (a) the research involves no more than minimal risk to the participants;
- 1036 (b) the alteration or waiver is unlikely to adversely affect the welfare of the  
1037 participants;
- 1038 (c) it is impossible to carry out the research and to answer the research  
1039 question properly, given the research design, without the alteration or  
1040 waiver;
- 1041 (d) whenever possible and appropriate, the participants will be debriefed and  
1042 provided with additional pertinent information after participation or at a  
1043 later time during the study; and
- 1044 (e) the altered or waived consent does not involve a therapeutic intervention,  
1045 or other clinical or diagnostic interventions.

1046 **Application** In the circumstances described under Article 3.7, the nature of the research may  
1047 justify a limited or temporary departure from the general requirement for  
1048 consent prior to participation in research. It is the responsibility of researchers  
1049 to justify the need for such a departure. It is the responsibility of REBs,  
1050 however, to understand that certain research methodologies necessitate a  
1051 different approach to consent and to exercise judgment on whether the need for

1052 the research justifies a limited or temporary exception to the general  
1053 requirements in a particular case.

1054 It should be noted that in cases of randomization and blinding in clinical trials,  
1055 neither the research participants nor the researchers know which treatment arm  
1056 the participant will be receiving before the research commences. This is not  
1057 regarded as a waiver or alteration of the requirements for consent, however, so  
1058 long as the research participants or their authorized third parties are informed  
1059 of the probability of being randomly assigned to one arm of the study or  
1060 another.

1061 *Research Involving Partial Disclosure or Deception*

1062 Some social science research, particularly in psychology, seeks to learn about  
1063 human responses to situations that have been created experimentally. Some  
1064 types of research can be carried out only if the participants do not know in  
1065 advance the true purpose of the research. For example, some social science  
1066 research that critically probes the inner workings of publicly accountable  
1067 institutions might never be conducted without limited recourse to partial  
1068 disclosure. In some research, therefore, participants may not know that they are  
1069 part of a research project until it is over, or they may be told in advance about  
1070 the task that they will be asked to perform, yet given additional information  
1071 that provides them with a different perspective on some aspect of the task or  
1072 research and/or its purpose. For such techniques to fall within the exception to  
1073 the general requirement of full disclosure for consent, the research must meet the  
1074 requirements of Article 3.7.

1075 Where partial disclosure or deception has been used, debriefing is an important  
1076 mechanism in maintaining the participant's trust in the research community. The  
1077 debriefing referred to in Article 3.7(d) should be proportionate to the sensitivity  
1078 of the issue. Often, debriefing can be quite simple and straightforward. In  
1079 sensitive cases, researchers should provide, in addition to candid disclosure, a  
1080 full explanation of why participants were temporarily led to believe that the  
1081 research, or some aspect of it, had a different purpose, or why participants  
1082 received less than full disclosure. The researchers should give details about the  
1083 importance of the research, the necessity of having to resort to partial disclosure  
1084 or deception, and their concern about the welfare of the participants. They  
1085 should seek to remove any misconceptions that may have arisen and to re-  
1086 establish any trust that might have been lost, by explaining why these research  
1087 procedures were necessary to obtain scientifically valid findings.

1088 Immediate, full debriefing of all individuals who have contributed data may not  
1089 be feasible in all cases. In studies with data collection over a longer term,  
1090 debriefing may have to be deferred until the end of the project. In some cases –  
1091 for example, in research involving children – it may be more appropriate to  
1092 debrief the parents, guardians or authorized third parties rather than the  
1093 participants themselves. In other cases, it may be more appropriate to debrief  
1094 the entire family or community. It may sometimes be appropriate to modify the  
1095 debriefing to be sensitive to the participant's needs and feelings.

1096 In studies in which a waiver of prior consent has been allowed, it may still be  
1097 possible for participants to express their consent or refusal at the conclusion of  
1098 the study, following debriefing. In cases where a participant expresses concerns  
1099 about participation in a study, the researcher may give the participant the option  
1100 of removing his or her data from the project. Researchers should be required, as  
1101 part of their research proposal, to set out the conditions under which they would  
1102 not be able to remove a participant's data from the study even if the participant  
1103 requested such a withdrawal, and justify why these conditions are essential for  
1104 conducting the research. Where under the terms of the research proposal the  
1105 participants are not permitted to withdraw their data, the identity of the  
1106 participant shall be protected. Participants who express concern about the  
1107 conduct of the study at the time of debriefing or who contest the limits imposed  
1108 on withdrawing their data should be given contact information for the REB that  
1109 approved the research.

### 1110 **Consent in Individual Medical Emergencies**

1111 This section addresses the exception to consent in situations where an individual who  
1112 requires urgent medical care is unable to provide consent due to loss of consciousness or  
1113 capacity, and the delay to seek authorized third party consent could seriously compromise  
1114 that individual's health. Certain types of medical emergency practices can be evaluated  
1115 only when they occur, hence the need for this exception.

1116 This section is to be distinguished, however, from situations where there is a publicly  
1117 declared emergency (such as the SARS crisis or a major flood) that disrupts the ordinary  
1118 system for obtaining REB approval for research. For guidance on research ethics review  
1119 during a publicly declared emergency see Articles 6.21 and 6.22.

1120 **Article 3.8** Subject to all applicable legal and regulatory requirements, research involving  
1121 medical emergencies shall be conducted only if it addresses the emergency  
1122 needs of individuals involved, and then only in accordance with criteria  
1123 established in advance of such research by the REB. The REB may allow  
1124 research that involves medical emergencies to be carried out without the  
1125 consent of the participant or of his or her authorized third party if all of the  
1126 following apply:

- 1127 (a) a serious threat to the prospective participant requires immediate  
1128 intervention;
- 1129 (b) either no standard efficacious care exists or the research offers a real  
1130 possibility of direct benefit to the participant in comparison with standard  
1131 care;
- 1132 (c) either the risk is not greater than that involved in standard efficacious  
1133 care, or it is clearly justified by the direct benefits to the participant;
- 1134 (d) the prospective participant is unconscious or lacks capacity to understand  
1135 the risks, methods and purposes of the research;
- 1136 (e) third-party authorization cannot be secured in sufficient time, despite

1137 diligent and documented efforts to do so; and

1138 (f) no relevant prior directive by the participant is known to exist.

1139 When a previously incapacitated participant regains capacity, or when an  
1140 authorized third party is found, consent shall be sought promptly for  
1141 continuation in the project and for subsequent examinations or tests related  
1142 to the study.

1143 **Application** For purposes of studying potential improvement in the treatment of life-  
1144 threatening conditions, Article 3.8 outlines an exception, in addition to that in  
1145 Article 3.7, to the general obligation of seeking consent from those  
1146 participating in research.

1147 It is the responsibility of researchers to justify to the REB the need for recourse  
1148 to this exception. The underlying assumption of Article 3.8 is that the  
1149 participant could not receive the direct benefits of the research without  
1150 foregoing the consent of the participant or of his or her authorized third party.  
1151 Article 3.8 indicates that research in emergency medicine must be reviewed by  
1152 the REB, be restricted to the emergency needs of the participants, and be  
1153 conducted under criteria designated by the REB.

1154 It is unethical to expose participants to any additional risk without their consent if  
1155 standard efficacious care exists, unless it can clearly be shown that there is a  
1156 realistic possibility of significantly improving the participant's condition.  
1157 Accordingly, paragraphs (b) and (c) of Article 3.8 indicate that researchers and  
1158 REBs must satisfy the requirements of clinical equipoise and assess the risks and  
1159 potential benefits of proposed research against existing standard efficacious care.

1160 To respect the autonomy of the research participant, Article 3.8(e) requires  
1161 researchers to undertake diligent efforts to contact authorized third parties, if  
1162 reasonably feasible, and to document such efforts for the benefit of both the  
1163 participant and for the continuing review functions of the REB. The article also  
1164 requires that research participants who regain capacity be promptly afforded the  
1165 opportunity to consent concerning continued participation. Concern for the  
1166 patient's welfare is paramount and should be informed by ethical and  
1167 professional judgment.

1168 Because their incapacity to exercise consent makes them vulnerable, prospective  
1169 participants for emergency research are owed special ethical obligations and  
1170 protection commensurate with the risks involved. Their welfare should be  
1171 protected by additional safeguards, where feasible and appropriate. These might  
1172 include: additional scientific, medical or REB consultation; procedures to  
1173 identify potential participants in advance to seek consent prior to the occurrence  
1174 of the emergency situation; consultation with former and potential participants;  
1175 and special monitoring procedures to be followed by data safety and monitoring  
1176 boards.



1177 **C. Capacity**

1178 Capacity refers to the ability of prospective or actual participants to understand relevant  
1179 information presented and to appreciate the potential consequences of any given decision. This  
1180 ability may vary according to the complexity of the choice being made, the circumstances  
1181 surrounding the decision, or the time in question. The determination of capacity to participate  
1182 in research, then, is not a static determination but a process that may change over time,  
1183 depending on the nature of the decision the potential participant needs to make and changes in  
1184 the participant's condition. Assessing capacity is a question of determining, at a particular  
1185 point in time, whether a research participant (or potential participant) meets the bar for  
1186 understanding the nature and consequences, risks and potential benefits, of a particular  
1187 research project.

1188 One may therefore have diminished capacity and still be able to decide whether to participate  
1189 in certain types of research. Researchers should be aware of all applicable legal and regulatory  
1190 requirements with respect to capacity. These vary among jurisdictions. Authorized third  
1191 parties should also be aware of their legal responsibilities.

1192 In keeping with the principle of justice, ethical considerations around research involving those  
1193 who lack the capacity to consent on their own behalf must seek to balance the vulnerability  
1194 that arises from their lack of capacity with the injustice that would arise from their exclusion  
1195 from the potential benefits of research. (See Chapter 4).

1196 As indicated in Chapter 1, respect for persons and concern for welfare entails high ethical  
1197 obligations to vulnerable individuals. Such obligations often translate into special procedures  
1198 to promote and protect their interests. The articles that follow detail the special procedures for  
1199 research involving individuals who lack the capacity to consent to participate in particular  
1200 research projects.

1201 **Article 3.9** For research involving individuals who lack the capacity, either permanently or  
1202 temporarily, to decide for themselves whether to participate, the REB shall  
1203 ensure that, as a minimum, the following conditions are met:

- 1204 (a) the researcher should seek consent from the authorized third party and  
1205 shall show how that consent will be sought from the authorized third  
1206 party, as well as how the participants' welfare will be protected;
- 1207 (b) the authorized third party shall not be the researcher or any other member  
1208 of the research team;
- 1209 (c) the consent of an authorized third party will be required throughout the  
1210 participation in research of a participant who lacks capacity to consent on  
1211 his/her own behalf; and
- 1212 (d) when authorization for participation was granted by an authorized third  
1213 party, and the participant acquires or regains capacity during the course of  
1214 the research, the researcher shall promptly seek the participant's consent  
1215 as a condition of continuing participation.

1216 **Application** The decision of authorized third parties should be based on their knowledge of  
1217 the potential participants and on a consideration of the potential participants'

1218 welfare. The third parties should not be in a position of conflict of interests when  
1219 making their decision.

1220 Article 3.9 outlines other safeguards to protect those who lack the capacity to  
1221 consent to participation in research. The article details various considerations  
1222 relevant to the use of third-party authorization. Beyond the legal and regulatory  
1223 requirements for seeking consent from authorized third parties, family members  
1224 and friends may provide information to the authorized third party about the  
1225 interests and previous wishes of prospective participants.

1226 **Article 3.10** Where an authorized third party has consented on behalf of a person who lacks  
1227 legal capacity, but that person has some ability to understand the significance  
1228 of the research, the researcher shall ascertain the wishes of that person with  
1229 respect to participation. The potential participant's dissent will preclude his or  
1230 her participation.

1231 **Application** Many individuals who lack legal capacity to make decisions may still be able  
1232 to express their wishes in a meaningful way, even if such expression may not  
1233 fulfil the requirements for consent. Prospective participants may thus be capable  
1234 of verbally or physically assenting to, or dissenting from, participation in  
1235 research. Those who may be capable of assent or dissent include:

1236 (a) those whose capacity is in the process of development, such as children  
1237 whose capacity for judgment and self-direction is maturing;

1238 (b) those who once were capable of making an autonomous decision regarding  
1239 consent but whose capacity is diminishing or fluctuating; and

1240 (c) those whose capacity remains only partially developed, such as those  
1241 suffering from permanent cognitive impairment.

1242 While their assent would not be sufficient to permit them to participate in the  
1243 absence of consent by an authorized third party, their expression of dissent or  
1244 signs suggesting dissent must be respected.

### 1245 **Research Directives For Individuals Who Lack Capacity**

1246 Although advance directives for treatment are recognized as a legitimate tool in health care,  
1247 the use of directives in the context of research is not well developed and have no legal  
1248 status. For the purposes of this Policy, research directives should be understood to express  
1249 an individual's preferences for participation in future research in the event that the  
1250 individual loses capacity. Research directives are written instructions to be used by the  
1251 authorized third party as information on a potential participant's preferences when the third  
1252 party is asked to provide substitute consent.

1253 The efficacy of research directives is unknown and their legal status has not yet been  
1254 recognized or tested. Research directives, nevertheless, are congruent with this Policy's  
1255 core principle of respect for persons. The use of research directives respects the right of  
1256 individuals to express their preference regarding participation in research and respects  
1257 privacy by allowing individuals to control information about themselves and materials from

1258 their bodies. Authorized third parties should consult with an individual's research directive  
1259 when making decisions about their involvement in research.

1260 **Article 3.11** Research directives allow individuals with capacity to express preferences  
1261 about their future participation in research should they ever lose capacity.  
1262 Researchers and authorized third parties should take these directives into  
1263 account during the consent process, but only if the individual who provided  
1264 the research directive lacks capacity at the time the research is initiated.

1265 **Application** Research directives are useful to individuals who are already participating in  
1266 research as well as those who are not participating but may wish to  
1267 participate in research at a later date. They give individuals a range of  
1268 options regarding future participation in research. The use of research  
1269 directives is particularly relevant for research involving participants with  
1270 diminishing capacity, fluctuating capacity, or degenerative conditions and  
1271 research that collects information or human biological materials.

1272 The use of research directives does not alter the requirements for consent as  
1273 articulated by the provisions of this Policy. In particular, in accordance with  
1274 Article 3.9, researchers are required to seek the consent of authorized third  
1275 parties before individuals who lack capacity can participate in research. If an  
1276 individual regains capacity the researcher should promptly seek the consent  
1277 of the individual as a condition of continuing participation.

1278 Researchers, institutions and organizations may suggest the use of research  
1279 directives in order to give participants an opportunity to express preferences  
1280 about the use of information or material that has already been collected.  
1281 Researchers who collect information or human biological materials for a  
1282 specific research project may anticipate subsequent research uses. Some  
1283 types of research initiatives (research platforms) involve long-term retention  
1284 and use of information or human biological materials for research purposes  
1285 (e.g. longitudinal studies that involve biobanking). These platforms typically  
1286 cannot specify at the time of initial collection every study that could be  
1287 carried out using the participants' information or human biological  
1288 materials. Research directives may be used in these contexts to give  
1289 participants the opportunity to express their preference about future research  
1290 should they lose capacity.

1291 In long-term studies, research directives may be used to allow participants to  
1292 make choices about other aspects of research participation. For example,  
1293 participants could specify preferences about receiving findings or continuing  
1294 use of information or samples if the participant loses capacity or upon death.

1295 Individuals can also use research directives to express preferences  
1296 concerning participation in future research. For example, individuals in an  
1297 early stage of dementia may use a research directive to express their  
1298 preferences for future participation in research that, due to diminishing  
1299 capacity, they would not otherwise be able to consent to on their own. They  
1300 also allow existing participants to express their preference to continue to

1301 participate in research should they lose capacity. Research directives should  
1302 be as specific as possible and in the event of ambiguity or imprecision,  
1303 should be interpreted narrowly.

#### 1304 **D. Consent Shall Be Documented**

1305 **Article 3.12** Evidence of consent shall be contained either in a signed consent form or in  
1306 documentation by the researcher of other means of consent.

1307 **Application** Written consent through a signed statement from the participant is a common  
1308 means of demonstrating consent, and in some instances, is mandatory (e.g.  
1309 Health Canada regulations under the *Food and Drugs Act*, the Quebec Civil  
1310 Code). There are other means of providing consent that are equally ethically  
1311 acceptable however. In some types of research, and for some groups or  
1312 individuals, written consent may be perceived by some research participants as  
1313 an attempt to legalize or formalize the consent process and thus may be  
1314 interpreted as a violation of trust. In these cases, oral consent, a verbal  
1315 agreement or a handshake may be required, rather than signing a consent form.  
1316 In some cultures, the giving and receiving of gifts symbolizes the establishment  
1317 of a relationship comparable to consent.

1318 Where consent is not documented in a signed consent form, researchers use  
1319 a range of consent procedures, including oral consent, field notes, and other  
1320 strategies, for documenting the consent process. Consent may also be  
1321 demonstrated solely by the actions of the participant – for example, through  
1322 the return of a completed questionnaire. Where there are valid reasons for  
1323 not recording consent in writing, the procedures used to seek consent must  
1324 be documented. (See Article 10.2).

1325 Whether or not a consent form is signed, it may be advisable to leave a written  
1326 statement of the information conveyed in the consent process with the  
1327 participant. For the participant, it is evidence of the fact that he or she has  
1328 agreed to participate in a particular research project. It may serve as a reminder  
1329 to the participant of the terms of the research. It may also facilitate the ability  
1330 of the participant to consider and re-consider his or her involvement as the  
1331 research proceeds. However, researchers should not leave any documentation  
1332 with a participant if it may compromise their safety or confidentiality.  
1333 Additionally, in some cases it may not be appropriate to leave a written  
1334 statement, such as in cultural settings where such written documentation is  
1335 contrary to prevailing norms.

#### 1336 **Endnotes**

---

<sup>1</sup> For example, see Article 21 of the Civil Code of Québec, which sets conditions for the conduct of research involving minors or adults who lack the capacity to consent.

<sup>2</sup> The term “human biological materials” may be considered, for the purposes of most of this Policy, to include materials related to human reproduction. The last Section of Chapter 12 discusses ethical issues specific to such materials.

# Chapter 4

1337

1338

## FAIRNESS AND EQUITY IN RESEARCH PARTICIPATION

1339

### A. Introduction

1340

1341

1342

1343

1344

1345

1346

1347

The principle of justice holds that particular individuals, groups, or communities should neither bear an unfair share of the direct burdens of participating in research, nor should they be unfairly excluded from the potential benefits of research participation. Inclusiveness in research and fair distribution of benefits and burdens should be an important consideration for researchers, research ethics boards (REBs), research institutions and sponsors. Issues of fair and equitable treatment arise in deciding whether and how to include individuals, groups or communities in research, the basis for exclusion of some, and social justice issues such as how research differentially impacts groups and communities in society.

1348

1349

1350

1351

1352

1353

1354

1355

1356

This chapter addresses inclusion in research of individuals and groups that might be inappropriately excluded on the basis of attributes such as culture, language, gender, race, ethnicity, age and disability. It provides guidance relevant to inclusion in research of certain groups such as women, children, the elderly, and those who lack capacity to consent to participate in research. Historically, these groups have been inappropriately excluded from research. This chapter also addresses the fair inclusion and equitable treatment of individuals and communities whose situation or circumstances makes them vulnerable in the context of a specific research project. Such individuals run the risk of being included in research in ways that may be unfair and inequitable.

1357

1358

1359

1360

1361

1362

1363

1364

1365

Benefits of research participation may be direct, where, for example, an individual participant experiences amelioration of a health condition because of an experimental therapy or learns new information about social issues by participating in a research focus group. In a community hosting the research, benefits may take the form of information sharing, training for local personnel, the establishment of health care or similar services. Benefits may be indirect, where an individual's research participation or a study involving a community contributes to advancement in knowledge that may lead to improved conditions for a group to which the participant belongs. Such knowledge may inform other communities or society in general.

1366

1367

1368

1369

1370

1371

1372

Over-protectionist attitudes or practices of researchers or REBs, whether intentional or inadvertent, exclude some members of society or communities from participating in research, and may therefore fail to treat those individuals or communities justly. For example, age has been used to exclude individuals from participation in research, particularly health research. The result of such exclusion is that insufficient research has been done to ensure treatments that are frequently given to the young and the elderly are effective and safe in these populations.

1373

Researchers, institutions and REBs all have important roles to play in advancing that societal

1374 commitment and ensuring a fair distribution of the benefits and burdens of research.  
1375 Researchers and REBs must navigate between the dangers of imposing unfair burdens on  
1376 particular research participants, groups, and communities and overprotecting them.

## 1377 **B. Appropriate Inclusion**

1378 **Article 4.1** Taking into account the scope and objectives of their research, researchers  
1379 should be inclusive in selecting research participants. Researchers shall not  
1380 exclude individuals from the opportunity to participate in research on the basis  
1381 of attributes such as culture, language, religion, race, disability, sexual  
1382 orientation, ethnicity, linguistic proficiency, gender or age, unless there is a  
1383 valid reason for the exclusion.

1384 **Application** Article 4.1 is based on the principle of justice. It imposes a duty on researchers  
1385 not to exclude individuals or groups from participation for reasons that are  
1386 unrelated to the research. Groups have been inappropriately excluded from  
1387 participation in research on the basis of attributes such as gender, race,  
1388 ethnicity, age and disability.

1389 The focus, objective, nature of research and context in which the research is  
1390 conducted inform the inclusion and exclusion criteria for a specific research  
1391 project or study. Some research may be focused on a certain individual (such as  
1392 in a biography) or a group of individuals who share a specific characteristic (as  
1393 in a study of an identifiable group of painters who happen to be all of one sex,  
1394 race or religion, or of a religious order that is restricted to one sex, or research  
1395 focused on certain cultural traditions or languages). Such research should not  
1396 be precluded so long as the selection criteria for those to be included in the  
1397 research are germane to answering the research question. Researchers who plan  
1398 to actively exclude particular groups should clarify to their REBs the grounds  
1399 for the exclusion.

1400 Where a language barrier exists between the researcher and the potential  
1401 participant, various measures may be used to ensure effective communication  
1402 between them in recruitment and consent discussions. For example, an  
1403 intermediary who may not be part of the research study or team, but who is  
1404 competent in the language used by the researchers as well as that preferred by  
1405 the research participant, may assist with communication between potential  
1406 participants and researchers. The selection of the intermediary and the  
1407 intermediary's activities will depend on the nature, context, and risks of the  
1408 research.

## 1409 **C. Inappropriate Exclusion**

### 1410 **Research Involving Women**

1411 Women have historically been inappropriately excluded from participating in some  
1412 research. This exclusion of women, where unwarranted, has delayed the advancement of  
1413 knowledge, denied potential benefits to women, and exposed women to harm when  
1414 research findings from male-only studies have been generalized inappropriately to women,

1415 as has often been the case in clinical drug trials, for example. The inclusion of women in  
1416 research advances the commitment to justice, improves the generalizability of research  
1417 results where that is a goal of the research, and is essential to ensure that women and men  
1418 benefit equally from research.

1419 **Article 4.2** Women shall not be inappropriately excluded from research solely on the basis  
1420 of gender or reproductive capacity.

1421 **Application** While some research is properly focused on particular research populations  
1422 that do not include women or include very few women, women should  
1423 generally be represented where there is a reasonable expectation that the  
1424 results of the research will be generalized to women.

1425 Article 4.2 rejects discriminatory and unethical use of inclusion or exclusion  
1426 criteria that presumptively or inappropriately exclude women because of their  
1427 gender or reproductive capacity. In considering research on pregnant or  
1428 breastfeeding women, researchers and REBs shall, however, take into account  
1429 risks and potential benefits for the woman and her embryo, fetus or infant.

### 1430 **Research Involving Children**

1431 Children have varying degrees of maturity, metabolically, immunologically and  
1432 cognitively, which presents important challenges for research design and consent,  
1433 depending on the nature and complexity of the research. In addition to vulnerability that  
1434 arises from their developmental status, children may also lack capacity to consent to  
1435 participate in research. (See Article 4.5). As well, physical or psychological harms a child  
1436 may experience in a research setting may have long-lasting consequences. As a result,  
1437 researchers have often simply avoided the inclusion of children in some research, especially  
1438 in clinical trials testing new treatments, so as to eliminate any risks. The result is a  
1439 generally poor understanding of how the results of clinical trials conducted with adults only  
1440 apply to children.

1441 As is the case with women, the inclusion of children in research advances the commitment  
1442 to justice in research by improving our knowledge of, and ability to respond to, the unique  
1443 needs of children throughout their development.

1444 **Article 4.3** Children shall not be inappropriately excluded from research solely on the  
1445 basis of their age or development status.

1446 **Application** Researchers should not automatically exclude children from research, unless  
1447 there is a valid reason for doing so. When considering the inclusion of  
1448 children in research, researchers and REBs shall consider a child's stage of  
1449 physical, physiological, psychological and social development to ensure  
1450 adequate protections for the child's welfare. Where children have not yet  
1451 attained the capacity to consent for themselves to participate in research,  
1452 researchers shall seek consent from an authorized third party while  
1453 ascertaining the child's assent or dissent, as outlined in Chapter 3. Note that  
1454 Article 4.5 equally applies to children.

1455 **Research Involving the Elderly**

1456 As the population ages, the proportion of elderly people is increasing and so is their life-  
1457 expectancy. Research designed to improve our understanding of a wide range of aspects of  
1458 aging and the lives of elderly people is important for ensuring that they stay fully integrated  
1459 into society and maintain a continuing high quality of life. Medically, elderly patients are  
1460 the highest consumers of drugs, yet many of these treatments have not been tested  
1461 adequately on elderly patients. Research that takes into account the differential effects on  
1462 the elderly and how best to accommodate their needs provides scientific evidence that can  
1463 inform changes to policies and standards of care for the elderly.

1464 **Article 4.4** Elderly people shall not be inappropriately excluded from research solely on  
1465 the basis of their age.

1466 **Application** REBs and researchers should ensure that elderly people are not  
1467 automatically excluded from research unless there is a valid reason for doing  
1468 so. When considering the inclusion of elderly people in research, researchers  
1469 and REBs shall consider their physical and social needs to ensure adequate  
1470 protections. Depending on their social circumstances, elderly people may  
1471 require some reasonable accommodation for mobility, transportation  
1472 support, and other types of assistance that would otherwise preclude their  
1473 participation in research. The principle of justice requires that such  
1474 accommodations for the natural processes of aging be considered by REBs  
1475 and researchers to ensure that exclusion of the elderly is not based on easily  
1476 remediable issues that are not germane to the research question.

1477 **Research Involving Participants Who Lack the Capacity to Consent for Themselves**

1478 The core principles of justice and concern for welfare entail special ethical obligations toward  
1479 individuals who lack capacity to consent to participate in research. This section sets out  
1480 conditions that apply to research involving those who cannot consent for themselves. It should  
1481 be read in conjunction with Section C of Chapter 3.

1482 **Article 4.5** Subject to conditions in Articles 3.9 and 3.10, individuals who lack capacity to  
1483 consent to participate in research shall not be inappropriately excluded from  
1484 research. Where a researcher seeks to involve individuals in research who do  
1485 not have capacity to consent for themselves, the researcher shall satisfy the  
1486 REB that:

1487 (a) the research question can be addressed only with participants within the  
1488 identified group; and

1489 (b) the research involves minimal risk or a minor increase above minimal risk  
1490 with appropriate justification; and

1491 (c) the research maintains an appropriate balance of risks commensurate with  
1492 the potential to provide direct benefits to the participants or the relevant  
1493 group to which they belong.



1494 **Application** Individuals with cognitive impairments or intellectual disabilities and  
1495 children may lack capacity to consent to participate in particular research  
1496 initiatives. As a result, they have, historically, experienced both over-  
1497 inclusion as populations of convenience for some research, and also  
1498 unjustified exclusion from other research. Yet the advancement of  
1499 knowledge about their social, psychological and health experiences and  
1500 needs may depend on their appropriate participation in research. Their  
1501 inclusion in research requires special considerations as outlined in this  
1502 article.

1503 To be ethically acceptable, the participation of those who lack capacity to  
1504 consent for themselves shall be necessary and appropriate to address the  
1505 research question. Researchers and REBs shall consider the level of risk to  
1506 which participants who lack capacity to consent are exposed, and the potential  
1507 for benefits accruing directly to the participants or to a group to which they  
1508 belong. Their participation should generally be limited to research of minimal  
1509 risk as defined in this Policy (see Chapter 2 for the definition of minimal risk).  
1510 The prospect of benefits for participants should be commensurate with the level  
1511 of risk entailed by the research.

1512 Where the research entails only minimal risk, it should at least have the  
1513 potential to provide benefits to participants or to a group to which they belong.  
1514 Where the research presents a minor increase above minimal risk, it should  
1515 have appropriate justification and the potential for direct benefits for the  
1516 participants themselves. Where the research presents a minor increase above  
1517 minimal risk but no prospect for direct benefits to the participants themselves,  
1518 it should have the potential to yield generalizable knowledge that is likely to  
1519 benefit the population from which the participants are recruited.

1520 The research design should take into account factors that may affect the  
1521 capacity of potential research participants to receive information, to consent  
1522 to the research at some stage or to participate in it. These factors may be  
1523 permanent or may vary over time. The participant's capacity to consent may  
1524 fluctuate over time. Articles 3.9 and 3.10 in Chapter 3 establish other  
1525 conditions regarding research that involve individuals who lack capacity to  
1526 consent. This includes the involvement of an authorized third party to  
1527 consent on their behalf, and adequate provisions to ascertain the wishes of  
1528 the individuals concerning their participation.

#### 1529 **D. Inappropriate Inclusion**

1530 The core principles of respect for persons and concern for welfare entail special ethical  
1531 obligations toward individuals or groups whose circumstances may lead to their  
1532 vulnerability in the context of a specific research project or study and limit their ability to  
1533 fully safeguard their own interests. These may include individuals who are institutionalized,  
1534 those in dependent situations, or those whose circumstances, such as poverty or poor health  
1535 status, may render even modest incentives to participate so attractive as to constitute an  
1536 inducement to take risks they would otherwise not take. Their situation may also  
1537 compromise the voluntariness of consent in other ways. However, such individuals should

1538 not automatically be considered vulnerable simply because of assumptions about the  
1539 vulnerability of the group to which they belong. Their particular circumstances shall be  
1540 considered in the context of the proposed research project.

1541 **Article 4.6** Individuals or groups whose circumstances may make them especially  
1542 convenient for researchers to recruit into research projects shall not be included  
1543 in research solely on the basis of these convenient circumstances.

1544 **Application** REBs and researchers shall carefully examine the relationship between the  
1545 circumstances of the individuals and communities they aim to recruit and the  
1546 research questions they aim to answer. They should not presume that these  
1547 circumstances will either automatically preclude or qualify individuals or  
1548 communities for participation. Researchers and REBs should recognize and  
1549 address changes in a participant’s circumstances that may create, heighten or  
1550 attenuate their vulnerability and provide special protections or consideration.  
1551 This may be the case for individuals or communities who are vulnerable to  
1552 abuse, unfair treatment or discrimination.

1553 In general, researchers should be familiar with the cultural, social and  
1554 economic circumstances of prospective individual research participants or host  
1555 communities. Researchers should anticipate, to the best of their ability, needs  
1556 of participants and their communities that might arise in any given research  
1557 project. Especially when participants and their communities have a wide range  
1558 of pressing needs as a result of their low socioeconomic circumstances, these  
1559 needs can present significant ethical challenges for researchers.

1560 Researchers should also be sensitive to the expectations and opinions of  
1561 participants regarding potential benefits of the research, and, where possible,  
1562 they should arrive at agreements with the community about the scope and  
1563 nature of the potential benefits that will be provided to participants and/or their  
1564 communities during and after the research. The agreements should, to the  
1565 extent possible, be explicit about the planned division of responsibilities for  
1566 realizing these benefits. In many cases, benefits may be delivered most  
1567 effectively in partnership with local organizations to better ensure balance in  
1568 the relationship between researchers and participants and mutual benefit in  
1569 researcher-community relations. (See Article 9.13 on mutual benefits in  
1570 collaborative research as it pertains to research involving Aboriginal peoples in  
1571 Canada).

1572 Researchers shall ensure that any potential benefits for participants or their  
1573 communities are not only commensurate with the risks of participation, but  
1574 also fair in terms of the overall distribution of benefits between participants  
1575 and researchers. A fair distribution of benefits can help ensure that  
1576 individuals and communities are not included in research merely because  
1577 their circumstances make their recruitment more convenient or efficient for  
1578 researchers.

1579 Benefits may, for example, take the form of information sharing, training for  
1580 local personnel, or health care or similar services. Where applicable, these

1581 research agreements outlining expectations and other considerations, whether  
1582 formal or informal, should be submitted to the REB under the auspices of  
1583 which the research is being conducted and by the REB or other responsible  
1584 body or bodies where such exists at the host research site or country for review.  
1585 (See Article 8.3).

1586 Since researchers are not aid agencies, REBs should be vigilant to ensure that  
1587 the proposed distribution of benefits is fair, without imposing undue burdens on  
1588 the researcher that would make it too difficult or costly to complete the  
1589 research reliably.

1590 Researchers should normally provide copies of publications or other research  
1591 reports or products arising from the research to the institution or organization –  
1592 normally the host institution – that is best suited to act as a repository and  
1593 disseminator of the results within the participating communities. This may not  
1594 be necessary in jurisdictions when the results are readily available in print or  
1595 electronically. In all cases, researchers should ensure that participating  
1596 communities are informed of how to access the results of the research that  
1597 should be made available to them in a culturally appropriate and meaningful  
1598 format, such as reports in plain language in addition to technical reports.

1599 **Respect for Communities and Minimizing Social Disruption**

1600 Researchers should recognize that communities, as well as individuals within those  
1601 communities, can be put at risk or their vulnerability may be exacerbated by research  
1602 activities. They should be aware of the implications of their research for local communities  
1603 and should be attentive to social changes that might be introduced by their research  
1604 projects. Researchers should also take care not to create unrealistic expectations among  
1605 participants within those communities with respect to the potential benefits of the research.  
1606 They should demonstrate respect for the communities they engage in research by exercising  
1607 due diligence to anticipate and minimize any risk and social disruption that might be  
1608 created by the research.



# Chapter 5

1609

1610

## PRIVACY AND CONFIDENTIALITY

1611 There is widespread agreement about the interests of research participants in protection of  
1612 privacy and the corresponding duties of researchers to treat personal information in a  
1613 confidential manner. Indeed, the respect for privacy in research is an internationally  
1614 recognized norm and ethical standard. Fundamental rights and freedoms in the Canadian  
1615 Constitution have been interpreted by courts to include privacy protections. Privacy rights  
1616 are also protected in federal and provincial/territorial legislation. Model voluntary codes<sup>1</sup>  
1617 have also been adopted to govern access to, and the protection of, personal information.  
1618 Some professional organizations have also established codes that establish the conditions  
1619 and obligations of their members regarding collection, use and disclosure of personal  
1620 information.

1621 Privacy risks in research relate to the identifiability of participants and the potential harms  
1622 they, or groups to which they belong, may experience from collection, use and disclosure of  
1623 personal information. Privacy risks arise at all stages of the research life cycle, including  
1624 initial collection of information, use and analysis to address research questions,  
1625 dissemination of research results, storage and retention of information, and disposal of  
1626 records or devices on which information is stored.

1627 This Policy is based on a proportionate approach to ethical assessment of research.  
1628 Researchers and research ethics boards (REBs) should identify and mitigate privacy risks,  
1629 keeping in mind that a matter that is not sensitive or embarrassing for the researcher may be  
1630 so for the participant.

1631 In addition to guidance provided in this Policy, researchers are responsible for compliance  
1632 with all applicable legal and regulatory requirements with respect to protection of privacy  
1633 and consent for the collection, use or disclosure of information about participants. These  
1634 requirements may vary by jurisdiction and, depending on who is funding/conducting the  
1635 research, may consist of obligations under the Constitution (including the *Canadian*  
1636 *Charter of Rights and Freedoms*), and federal or provincial privacy legislation, among  
1637 other legal and regulatory requirements.

### 1638 **A. Key Definitions and Principles**

#### 1639 **Privacy**

1640 Privacy refers to an individual's right to be free from intrusion or interference by others. It  
1641 is a fundamental right in a free and democratic society. Individuals have privacy interests in  
1642 relation to their bodies, personal information, thoughts and opinions, personal  
1643 communications with others and spaces they occupy. Research affects these various  
1644 domains of privacy in different ways, depending on its objectives and methods. An

1645 important aspect of privacy is the right to control information about oneself. The concept of  
1646 consent is related to the right to privacy. Privacy is respected if an individual has an  
1647 opportunity to exercise control over personal information by consenting to, or withholding  
1648 consent for, collection, use and/or disclosure of information. (See Chapter 3 for further  
1649 discussion of consent).

1650 **Confidentiality**

1651 The ethical duty of confidentiality refers to the obligation of an individual or organization  
1652 to safeguard information entrusted to it by another. The ethical duty of confidentiality  
1653 includes obligations to protect information from unauthorized access, use, disclosure,  
1654 modification, loss or theft. Fulfilling the ethical duty of confidentiality is essential to the  
1655 trust relationship between researcher and research participant, and to the integrity of the  
1656 research enterprise.

1657 **Security**

1658 Security refers to measures used to protect information. It includes physical, administrative  
1659 and technical safeguards. An individual or organization fulfills its confidentiality duties, in  
1660 part, by adopting and enforcing appropriate security measures. Physical safeguards include  
1661 the use of locked filing cabinets and the location of computers containing research data  
1662 away from public areas. Administrative safeguards include the development and  
1663 enforcement of organizational rules about who has access to personal information about  
1664 research participants. Technical safeguards include use of computer passwords, firewalls,  
1665 anti-virus, encryption and other measures that protect data from unauthorized access, loss  
1666 or modification.

1667 **Types of Information**

1668 Researchers may seek to collect, use, share and access different types of information about  
1669 research participants. Such information may include personal characteristics, such as age,  
1670 culture, educational background, employment history, health care, life experience, religion,  
1671 social status or other matters where an individual has a reasonable expectation of privacy.

1672 Information may be categorized along a spectrum of identifiability. For the purposes of this  
1673 Policy, researchers and REBs must consider if information proposed for use in research is  
1674 identifiable or non-identifiable.

1675 Information is identifiable if it, alone or when combined with other information available to  
1676 the person who receives it, can reasonably be expected to identify an individual. The term  
1677 “personal information” generally denotes identifiable information about an individual.

1678 The following categories help explain the spectrum of identifiability for the purposes of this  
1679 Policy:

- 1680       ▪ Directly identifying information – the information identifies a specific individual  
1681       through direct identifiers (e.g. name, social insurance number, personal health  
1682       number).

- 1683           ▪ Indirectly identifying information – the information can reasonably be expected to  
1684 identify an individual through a combination of indirect identifiers (e.g. date of  
1685 birth, place of residence or unique personal characteristic).
- 1686           ▪ De-identified/coded information – direct identifiers are removed and replaced  
1687 with a code. Depending on access to the code, it may be possible to re-identify  
1688 specific research participants (e.g. participants are assigned a code name and the  
1689 principal investigator retains a list that links the code name with the participant’s  
1690 actual name so data can be re-linked if necessary).
- 1691           ▪ Anonymized information – information is irrevocably stripped of identifiers, and a  
1692 code is not kept to allow future re-linkage.
- 1693           ▪ Anonymous information – information never had identifiers associated with it  
1694 (e.g. anonymous surveys).

1695 Ethical concerns regarding privacy decrease as it becomes more difficult or impossible to  
1696 associate information with a particular individual. These concerns also vary with the  
1697 sensitivity of the information and the extent to which access, use or disclosure may harm an  
1698 individual or group by exposing them to embarrassment, stigmatization, discrimination or  
1699 other detriments.

1700 Collection and use of anonymous data in research is the easiest way to protect participants,  
1701 although this is not always possible or desirable. A “next best” alternative is to anonymize  
1702 or de-identify the data at the earliest opportunity. While these measures often protect  
1703 participants from identification, use of de-identified/coded or anonymized information for  
1704 research may present risks of re-identification.

1705 Technological developments increase the ability to access, store, and analyze large volumes  
1706 of data. These activities may heighten risks of re-identification, such as when researchers  
1707 link datasets, as discussed in Section E of this chapter, or where a dataset contains  
1708 information about a population in a small geographical area or individuals with unique  
1709 characteristics (e.g. uncommon field of occupational specialization, diagnosis with a very  
1710 rare disease). Various factors affect the risk of re-identification<sup>2</sup> and researchers and REBs  
1711 should be vigilant to consider and reduce risks of re-identification.

1712 Failing the feasibility of using anonymous or anonymized data for research (and there are  
1713 many reasons why data may need to be gathered and retained in an identifiable form), the  
1714 ethical duty of confidentiality and appropriate measures to safeguard information become  
1715 paramount. This Policy generally requires more stringent protections in research involving  
1716 identifiable information. Researchers should consult their REB if they are uncertain about  
1717 whether information proposed for use in research is identifiable – for example, when  
1718 proposing to link de-identified datasets.

## 1719 **B. The Ethical Duty of Confidentiality**

1720 **Article 5.1** Researchers shall safeguard information entrusted to them and not misuse or  
1721 wrongfully disclose it.

1722 **Application** When researchers obtain information with a promise of confidentiality, they

1723 assume an ethical duty that is central to respect for research participants and the  
1724 integrity of the research enterprise. Breaches of confidentiality may harm the  
1725 participant, the trust relationship between the researcher and the participant,  
1726 other individuals or groups, and/or the reputation of the research community.  
1727 Research that probes sensitive topics (e.g. illegal activities) generally depends  
1728 on strong promises of confidentiality to establish trust with participants.

1729 The ethical duty of confidentiality applies to information obtained directly from  
1730 participants or from other researchers or organizations that have legal,  
1731 professional or other obligations to maintain confidentiality.

1732 The ethical duty of confidentiality must, at times, be balanced against legal or  
1733 professional requirements, or competing ethical considerations, that call for  
1734 disclosure of information obtained or created in a research context. For  
1735 example, in exceptional and compelling circumstances, researchers may be  
1736 subject to obligations to report information to authorities to protect the health,  
1737 life or safety of a research participant or third party. Researchers should be  
1738 aware of laws (such as laws that require reporting of children in need of  
1739 protection) or ethical codes (such as professional codes of conduct) that may  
1740 require disclosure of information they obtain in a research context. In other  
1741 situations, a third party may seek access to information obtained and/or created  
1742 in confidence in a research context. An access request may seek voluntary  
1743 disclosure of information or may seek to compel disclosure through force of  
1744 law (e.g. by subpoena). Chapter 1, Section C elaborates on research ethics and  
1745 law.

1746 Certain areas of research (such as research involving children at risk of abuse  
1747 or study of criminal behaviour) are more likely to put researchers in positions  
1748 where they may experience tension between the ethical duty of confidentiality  
1749 and disclosure to third parties. Researchers shall maintain their promise of  
1750 confidentiality to research participants within the extent permitted by law  
1751 and/or ethical principles. This may involve resisting requests for access, such  
1752 as opposing court applications seeking disclosure. Researchers' conduct in such  
1753 situations should be assessed on a case-by-case basis and guided by  
1754 consultation with colleagues, any relevant professional body, the REB, and/or  
1755 legal counsel. Institutions should support their researchers in maintaining  
1756 promises of confidentiality.

1757 In some instances, participants may waive confidentiality, for example, if  
1758 they wish to be identified for their contributions to the research. In such  
1759 situations, researchers should negotiate agreement with participants about  
1760 how participants may be identified to recognize their contribution. Where an  
1761 individual participant waives confidentiality but other members of the  
1762 participant group object because identification may cause harm to the group,  
1763 researchers shall maintain confidentiality. (See Articles 3.2 (f) and 10.5).

1764 **Article 5.2** Researchers shall describe measures for meeting confidentiality obligations and  
1765 explain any reasonably foreseeable disclosure requirements:



- 1766 (a) in application materials they submit to the REB; and  
1767 (b) during the consent process with potential research participants.

1768 **Application** This article recognizes that some research investigations are more likely to put  
1769 researchers in a position where they may have a requirement to disclose  
1770 information to third parties. The reasonable foreseeability of disclosure  
1771 requirements can be assessed by considering the nature and objectives of the  
1772 research inquiry. For example, research that involves interviewing high risk  
1773 families about inter-generational violence raises a reasonably foreseeable  
1774 prospect that researchers may acquire information that a child is being abused.  
1775 Researchers who reasonably foresee that their inquiries may give rise to a legal  
1776 or ethical reason to disclose information obtained in the research context shall  
1777 advise the REB and potential participants about the possibility of compelled  
1778 disclosure. Advising participants of reasonably foreseeable disclosure  
1779 requirements is an important aspect of consent.

1780 Situations may arise where researchers unexpectedly acquire information that  
1781 gives rise to a reason for disclosure to a third party, or researchers may receive  
1782 a disclosure demand from a third party. In such cases, advising a participant  
1783 about the disclosure may be important to respect the trust relationship with the  
1784 participant and to ensure the participant’s ongoing consent. Decisions about  
1785 whether, how and when to advise a participant of disclosure should be guided  
1786 by any applicable disciplinary standards and consultation with the REB,  
1787 colleagues, professional body and/or legal counsel.

1788 Researchers shall also inform participants and seek consent from participants if  
1789 personal information might be provided to government departments or  
1790 agencies, community partners in the research, personnel from an agency that  
1791 monitors the research, a research sponsor (such as a pharmaceutical company),  
1792 the REB or a regulatory agency.

1793 Researchers should avoid being put in a position of becoming informants for  
1794 authorities or leaders of organizations. For example, when records of prisoners,  
1795 employees, students or others are used for research purposes, the researcher  
1796 should not provide authorities with results that could identify individuals unless  
1797 the prior written consent of the participants is obtained. Researchers may,  
1798 however, provide administrative bodies with aggregated data that cannot be  
1799 linked to individuals, for purposes such as policy-making or program  
1800 evaluation. To seek consent, researchers should advise potential participants if  
1801 aggregated data from a study may be disclosed, particularly where such  
1802 disclosure may pose a risk to the participants. For example, aggregate data  
1803 provided to authorities about research on illicit drug use in a penitentiary may  
1804 pose risks to the prisoners, even though they are not identified individually.

1805 When designing their research, researchers should incorporate any  
1806 applicable statute-based or other legal principles that may afford protection  
1807 for the privacy of participants and confidentiality of research information.

1808 **C. Safeguarding Information**

1809 **Article 5.3** Researchers shall provide details to the REB regarding their proposed measures  
1810 for safeguarding information, for the full life cycle of information – that is, its  
1811 collection, use, dissemination, retention and/or disposal.

1812 **Application** Researchers shall assess privacy risks and threats to the security of  
1813 information for all stages of the research life cycle and implement  
1814 appropriate measures to protect information. Safeguarding information helps  
1815 respect the privacy of research participants and helps researchers fulfill their  
1816 confidentiality obligations. In adopting measures to safeguard information,  
1817 researchers should follow disciplinary standards and practices for the  
1818 collection and protection of information for research purposes. Formal  
1819 privacy impact assessments are required in some institutions and under  
1820 legislation or policy in some jurisdictions. Security measures should take  
1821 into account the nature, type and state of data (e.g. paper records or  
1822 electronic data stored on a mobile device, whether information contains  
1823 direct or indirect identifiers, whether data is in transit and more vulnerable to  
1824 unauthorized access). Measures for safeguarding information apply both to  
1825 original documents and copies of information.

1826 Factors relevant to the REB’s assessment of the adequacy of the researchers’  
1827 proposed measures for safeguarding information include:

- 1828 (a) the type of information to be collected;
- 1829 (b) the purpose for which the information will be used, and purpose of any  
1830 secondary use of identifiable information;
- 1831 (c) limits on the use, disclosure and retention of the information;
- 1832 (d) risks of re-identification of individuals;
- 1833 (e) appropriate security safeguards for the full life cycle of information;
- 1834 (f) any recording of observations (e.g. photographs, videos, sound  
1835 recordings) in the research that may allow identification of particular  
1836 participants;
- 1837 (g) any anticipated uses of personal information from the research; and
- 1838 (h) any anticipated linkage of data gathered in the research with other data  
1839 about participants, whether those data are contained in public or personal  
1840 records. (See also Section E).

1841 In considering the adequacy of proposed measures for safeguarding  
1842 information during its full life cycle, REBs should not automatically impose  
1843 a requirement that researchers destroy the research data. Stored information  
1844 may be useful for a variety of future purposes. Appropriate data retention  
1845 periods vary depending on the research discipline, research purpose and kind  
1846 of data involved. In some situations, formal data sharing with participants  
1847 may occur – for example, by giving individual participants copies of a  
1848 recording or transcript as a gift for personal, family or other archival use.

1849 Similarly, some funding bodies, such as the Social Sciences and Humanities  
1850 Research Council and the Canadian Institutes of Health Research, have  
1851 specific policies on data archiving and sharing.<sup>3</sup> Researchers should address  
1852 how the participant’s information will be handled if participants choose to  
1853 withdraw from research.

1854 In disseminating research results, researchers should not disclose direct  
1855 identifiers without the consent of research participants. Researchers should  
1856 take reasonable measures to ensure against inadvertent identification of  
1857 individuals or groups in publications or other means of dissemination, and  
1858 they must address this issue to the satisfaction of the REB.

1859 Consideration of future uses of personal information refers not just to research,  
1860 but also to other purposes, such as the future use of research materials for  
1861 educational purposes.

1862 Research data sent over the Internet may require encryption or use of special  
1863 denominalization software to prevent interception by unauthorized persons  
1864 or other risks to data security. In general, identifiable data obtained through  
1865 research that is kept on a computer and connected to the Internet should be  
1866 encrypted.

1867 **Article 5.4** Institutions or organizations where research data are held have a  
1868 responsibility to establish appropriate institutional security safeguards.

1869 **Application** In addition to the security measures researchers implement to protect data,  
1870 safeguards put in place at the institutional or organizational level also  
1871 provide important protection. Such data security safeguards should include  
1872 physical, administrative and technical measures and should address the full  
1873 life cycle of information. This includes institutional or organizational  
1874 safeguards for information while it is currently in use by researchers and for  
1875 any long-term retention of information.

1876 **D. Consent and Secondary Use of Identifiable**  
1877 **Information for Research Purposes**

1878 Secondary use refers to the use in research of information originally collected for a purpose  
1879 other than the current research purpose. Common examples are social science or health survey  
1880 datasets that are collected for specific research or statistical purposes, but then re-used to  
1881 answer other research questions. Information initially collected for program evaluation may be  
1882 useful for subsequent research. Other examples include health care records, school records,  
1883 biological specimens, vital statistics registries or unemployment records, originally created or  
1884 collected for therapeutic, educational or administrative purposes, but later sought for use in  
1885 research. Chapter 12 provides further guidance on research involving secondary use of  
1886 previously collected human biological materials.

1887 Secondary use avoids duplication in primary collection and therefore reduces burdens and costs  
1888 for participants and researchers. Privacy concerns and questions about the need to seek consent  
1889 arise, however, when information provided for secondary use in research can be linked to

1890 individuals and when the possibility exists that individuals can be identified in published reports  
1891 or through data linkage. Privacy legislation recognizes these concerns and permits secondary use  
1892 of identifiable information under certain circumstances.

1893 **Article 5.5** Researchers who seek a waiver of consent for secondary use of identifiable  
1894 information in research shall satisfy the REB that:

- 1895 (a) identifiable information is essential to the research;
- 1896 (b) the waiver is unlikely to adversely affect the welfare of individuals to  
1897 whom the information relates;
- 1898 (c) the researchers will take appropriate measures to protect the privacy of  
1899 individuals and to safeguard the identifiable information;
- 1900 (d) the researchers will comply with any known preferences previously  
1901 expressed by individuals about uses of their information;
- 1902 (e) it is impossible or impracticable to seek consent from individuals to  
1903 whom the information relates; and
- 1904 (f) The researchers have obtained any other necessary (e.g. legal) permission  
1905 for secondary use of information for research purposes.

1906 If a researcher satisfies all the conditions in Article 5.5(a) to (f), the REB may  
1907 approve the research without requiring consent from the individuals to whom the  
1908 information relates.

1909 **Application** This Policy does not require that researchers seek consent from individuals for  
1910 the secondary use of non-identifiable information. However, consent must be  
1911 sought where researchers propose to use identifiable information, unless the  
1912 researcher satisfies all the requirements in Article 5.5.

1913 The waiver of consent in this article is specific to secondary use of identifiable  
1914 information. The terms of Article 3.7 addresses alteration and waiver of consent  
1915 in other circumstances and does not apply here.

1916 Secondary use of information identifiable as originating from a specific  
1917 Aboriginal community, or a segment of the Aboriginal community at large, is  
1918 addressed in Article 9.20.<sup>4</sup>

1919 “Impracticable” refers to undue hardship or onerousness such that the conduct  
1920 of the research is jeopardized; it does not mean mere inconvenience. Consent  
1921 may be impossible or impracticable when the group is very large or its  
1922 members are likely to be deceased, geographically dispersed or difficult to  
1923 track. Attempting to track and contact members of the group may raise  
1924 additional privacy concerns. Financial, human and other resources required to  
1925 contact individuals and seek consent may impose undue hardship. In some  
1926 jurisdictions, privacy laws may preclude researchers from using personal  
1927 information to contact individuals to seek their consent for secondary use of  
1928 information.<sup>5</sup>

1929 Privacy laws may also impose specific rules regarding disclosure of information

1930		for secondary use in research. These laws may require the individual or
1931		organization that has custody or control of requested personal information to
1932		obtain approval from a privacy commissioner or other body before disclosing
1933		information to researchers, and may impose additional requirements such as
1934		information sharing agreements that describe disclosure conditions. Such
1935		conditions may include the requirement that the researcher not publish
1936		identifiable information or contact individuals to whom the information relates.
1937		Researchers should be aware of relevant laws that regulate disclosure of
1938		information for research purposes.
1939		At the time of initial collection, individuals may have had an opportunity to
1940		express preferences about future uses of personal information, including research
1941		uses. Researchers and REBs shall respect any known preferences. For example,
1942		where possible, identifiable information about individuals who have expressed
1943		objection to future use should be removed from the dataset before researchers
1944		use it for approved research.
1945		An REB may require that researchers engage in discussion with representatives
1946		of individuals or groups to whom the information relates where the proposed
1947		research involves information of greater sensitivity (e.g. genetic information,
1948		information about persons who seek help through domestic violence shelters, or
1949		information about sexual practices). Discussion is not intended as proxy consent.
1950		Rather, a goal of discussion is to seek input regarding the proposed research, such
1951		as the design of the research, measures for privacy protection and potential uses
1952		of research findings. Discussion may also be useful to determine that the research
1953		will not adversely affect the welfare of individuals to whom the information
1954		relates. Researchers should advise the REB of outcomes of such discussion and
1955		the REB may require modifications to the research proposal based on the
1956		feedback.
1957	<b>Article 5.6</b>	When secondary use of identifiable information without consent has been
1958		approved under Article 5.5, researchers who propose to contact individuals for
1959		additional information shall, prior to contact, seek REB approval of the plan for
1960		making contact.
1961	<b>Application</b>	In certain cases, a research goal may be achieved only through follow up
1962		contact with individuals to collect additional information. Under Article 5.5,
1963		the REB may have approved secondary use without consent based, in part,
1964		on the impossibility or impracticability of seeking consent. Where contact
1965		with a sub-group is feasible, researchers may subsequently wish to attempt
1966		to make contact with some individuals to obtain additional information.
1967		Contact with individuals whose previously collected information has been
1968		approved for secondary use in research raises privacy concerns. Individuals
1969		might not want to be contacted by researchers or might be upset that
1970		identifiable information was disclosed to researchers without their consent.
1971		The research benefits of follow-up contact must clearly outweigh the risks to
1972		individuals of follow-up contact, and the REB must be satisfied that the
1973		proposed manner of follow-up contact minimizes risks for individuals. The
1974		proposed plan should explain who will contact individuals to invite their

1975 participation in the research (e.g. a representative of the organization that  
1976 holds the individual's information) and the nature of their relationship with  
1977 those individuals. Researchers will need to seek consent from these  
1978 individuals for any new data collection. Article 3.1 provides further  
1979 guidance on consent and approaches to recruitment.

## 1980 **E. Data Linkage**

1981 **Article 5.7** Researchers who propose to engage in data linkage shall obtain REB  
1982 approval prior to carrying out the data linkage, unless the research relies  
1983 exclusively on publicly available information as discussed in Article 2.2.  
1984 The application for approval shall describe the data that will be linked and  
1985 the likelihood that identifiable information will be created through the data  
1986 linkage.

1987 Where data linkage involves or is likely to produce identifiable information,  
1988 researchers shall satisfy the REB that:

1989 (a) the data linkage is essential to the research; and

1990 (b) appropriate security measures will be implemented to safeguard  
1991 information.

1992 **Application** Growing numbers of databases and advancing technological capacity to link  
1993 databases create new research opportunities, but also new privacy risks. In  
1994 particular, linkage of de-identified or anonymized databases may permit re-  
1995 identification of individuals. This article provides guidance for researchers who  
1996 propose to carry out data linkage and requires that they assess and mitigate risks  
1997 of re-identification. Only a restricted number of individuals should perform the  
1998 function of merging databases. Researchers should use enhanced security  
1999 measures to store the merged file.

2000 Where researchers seek access to datasets held by another organization, it may  
2001 be preferable for the data holder to carry out the data linkage and remove  
2002 identifiers before disclosing the merged dataset.

2003 Legislation and organizational policies may regulate data linkage in specific  
2004 circumstances. For example, some personal information protection legislation  
2005 require data sharing agreements that regulate conditions under which data  
2006 linkage may be carried out. Data holders, such as statistics agencies, may also  
2007 have policies on data linkage.<sup>6</sup>

2008 Where researchers propose to access and link datasets of identifiable  
2009 information for the secondary purpose of research, the requirements of Section  
2010 D apply.

2011 **Endnotes**

---

<sup>1</sup> See, for example, the Canadian Standards Association’s Model Code for the Protection of Personal Information, (1996).

<sup>2</sup> For discussion of factors that affect risks of re-identification, see Khaled El-Emam, *Overview of Factors Affecting the Risk of Re-identification in Canada* (Report written for the Access to Information and Privacy Division of Health Canada, May 8, 2006), [www.ehealthinformation.ca/documents/HealthCanadaReidReport.pdf](http://www.ehealthinformation.ca/documents/HealthCanadaReidReport.pdf)

<sup>3</sup> See the SSHRC Research Data Archiving Policy, [www.sshrc-crsh.gc.ca/site/apply-demande/policies-politiques/edata-donnees\\_electroniques-eng.aspx](http://www.sshrc-crsh.gc.ca/site/apply-demande/policies-politiques/edata-donnees_electroniques-eng.aspx) and the CIHR Policy on Access to Research Outputs, (September 2007), [www.cihr-irsc.gc.ca/e/34846.html](http://www.cihr-irsc.gc.ca/e/34846.html)

<sup>4</sup> See also the Canadian Institutes of Health Research *Guidelines for Health Research Involving Aboriginal People*, (May 2007), [www.cihr-irsc.gc.ca/e/29134.html](http://www.cihr-irsc.gc.ca/e/29134.html)

<sup>5</sup> For discussion of factors relevant to assessing impracticability of consent, see, for example, the Canadian Institutes of Health Research *Best Practices for Protecting Privacy in Health Research* (September 2005), Section 3.3 “Secondary Use,” pp. 38 – 41.

<sup>6</sup> See, for example, Statistics Canada’s Policy on Record Linkage: [www.statcan.gc.ca/record-enregistrement/policy4-1-politique4-1-eng.htm](http://www.statcan.gc.ca/record-enregistrement/policy4-1-politique4-1-eng.htm)





# Chapter 6

2012

2013

## GOVERNANCE OF RESEARCH ETHICS REVIEW

2014 This chapter sets out the process of research ethics review: the elements necessary to  
2015 establish a research ethics board (REB) and operational guidelines for the REBs and the  
2016 review process, both initially and throughout the course of the research project. It also  
2017 includes guidelines for the conduct of research ethics review during publicly declared  
2018 emergencies.

2019 A key goal in establishing an appropriate governance structure for research ethics review is  
2020 to ensure that REBs operate with a clear mandate, authority, and accountability, and that  
2021 roles and responsibilities are clearly defined. REBs need operational independence to carry  
2022 out their role effectively and to properly apply the core principles of this Policy – respect  
2023 for persons, concern for welfare and justice – to their ethics review of research projects.  
2024 These operational guidelines are meant to be flexible enough to apply in various contexts,  
2025 at institutions of various sizes, and to the full range of research disciplines, fields and  
2026 methodologies.

### 2027 **A. Establishment of REBs**

#### 2028 **Authority, Mandate and Accountability**

2029 **Article 6.1** Institutions shall establish or appoint REB(s) to review the ethical  
2030 acceptability of all research involving humans conducted within their  
2031 jurisdiction or under their auspices – that is, by their faculty, staff or students  
2032 regardless of where the research is conducted, in accordance with this  
2033 Policy.

2034 **Application** Each institution is accountable for the research carried out in its own  
2035 jurisdiction or under its auspices. In fulfilling this responsibility, where  
2036 research with human participants takes place within the jurisdiction or under  
2037 the auspices of an institution, that institution shall establish the necessary  
2038 structure of an REB (or REBs) capable of reviewing the ethical acceptability of  
2039 that research. In fulfilling this responsibility, institutions may opt to appoint an  
2040 REB at another institution in accordance with the Memorandum of  
2041 Understanding between the Agencies and institutions<sup>1</sup>. Such appointment  
2042 should be based on an official agreement. To demonstrate their accountability,  
2043 institutions may wish to issue public reports summarizing the institution's  
2044 activities and initiatives relevant to the ethics review of research involving  
2045 humans, its administration and education.

2046 The number of REBs and the expertise of their members will depend on the

2047 range and volume of research for which that institution is responsible, in  
2048 accordance with the articles below relating to composition and membership.

2049 Members of an institution, that is its faculty, staff and students, may be  
2050 affiliated with other institutions, or may be engaged in consulting or other  
2051 professional activities in a separate enterprise. To enable the consistent  
2052 application of this Policy, members of the institution should obtain REB  
2053 approval of the ethical acceptability of their research if they engage in research  
2054 involving humans related to one of their other organizational affiliations or to  
2055 their supplemental professional activities. Should the institution assess that  
2056 some situations warrant an exception, the basis and conditions for case-by-case  
2057 exceptions shall be clearly documented in their institutional policies. Case-by-  
2058 case exceptions may be determined by such factors as the degree to which the  
2059 member's affiliation with the institution is his/her primary affiliation, by how  
2060 practical it is to distinguish the capacity in which the member is conducting the  
2061 research, and the research participants' reasonable perceptions of this. Other  
2062 factors include the availability of other avenues through which the member  
2063 may address the guidance in this Policy outside the institution, including the  
2064 possibility of sharing responsibility for research ethics review, and methods to  
2065 address real, potential or perceived conflict of interests issues.

2066 Similarly, the requirement for REB review applies to research dimensions of  
2067 student co-op work or field placements that are part of, and credited to,  
2068 educational programs to provide exposure to the field and allow application  
2069 of the knowledge and skills acquired from those programs. Where co-op  
2070 placements involve components of research, institutions and organizations  
2071 hosting co-op student researchers may consider specifying in advance, in  
2072 policies, agreements or contracts for co-op student placements, the roles and  
2073 responsibilities pertaining to ethics review of research involving humans of  
2074 the host organization versus those of the institution.

2075 **Article 6.2** The highest body within an institution shall establish the REB or REBs,  
2076 define an appropriate reporting relationship with the REBs, and ensure the  
2077 REBs are provided with necessary and sufficient ongoing financial and  
2078 administrative resources to fulfil their duties. REBs are independent in their  
2079 decision making and are accountable for the process of ethics review.

2080 **Application** REBs shall be established by and have an appropriate reporting relationship to  
2081 the highest body of the institution. This could be an individual, such as the  
2082 president, rector, or chief executive officer, or an equivalent body, such as a  
2083 governing council, board of directors, or council of administration. Institutions  
2084 shall have in place written procedures for the appointment, renewal and  
2085 removal of REB members.

2086 For the integrity of the research ethics process and to safeguard public trust  
2087 in that process, institutions shall ensure that REBs are able to operate  
2088 effectively and independently in their decision making. Disagreement over a  
2089 decision that cannot be resolved through discussion and reconsideration can  
2090 be resolved through the normal appeal process. (See Articles 6.17 to 6.19).

2091 Institutional policies and procedures shall also support and promote the  
2092 effective and independent operation of REBs. REBs should have the  
2093 independence to conduct ethics reviews free of inappropriate influence,  
2094 including situations of real, potential or perceived conflict of interests. (See  
2095 Chapter 7).

2096 As an entity that draws its authority and resources from the institution, the  
2097 REB remains accountable to the institution for the integrity of its processes.

2098 **Article 6.3** The institution grants the REB the mandate to review the ethical acceptability  
2099 of research on behalf of the institution, including approving, rejecting,  
2100 proposing modifications to, or terminating any proposed or ongoing research  
2101 involving human participants. This applies to research conducted under the  
2102 auspices or within the jurisdiction of the institution, using the considerations set  
2103 forth in this Policy.

2104 **Application** The institution shall delegate the authority of the REB through its normal process  
2105 of governance. In defining the scope of the REB’s mandate, the institution shall  
2106 clearly define the jurisdiction of the REB such that it covers as broad a range of  
2107 research consistent with a manageable workload and relevant competence. Where  
2108 the institution requires more than one REB, it should establish a mechanism to  
2109 coordinate the operations of all its REBs and clarify their relationship with each  
2110 other and with other relevant bodies or authorities. Institutions shall have clear  
2111 written policies describing the mandate of each REB. An institution may wish to  
2112 use different models for the ethics review of research conducted under its auspices.  
2113 (See Chapter 8).

2114 Institutions shall respect the authority delegated to the REB. An institution  
2115 may not override REB decisions simply to promote or prevent a particular  
2116 research project.

## 2117 **REB Composition**

### 2118 ***Basic REB Membership Requirements***

2119 The membership of the REB is designed to ensure competent independent research ethics  
2120 review. Provisions respecting its size, composition, terms of appointment and quorum are set  
2121 out below.

2122 **Article 6.4** The REB shall consist of at least five members, of whom:

2123 (a) at least two members have expertise in relevant research disciplines, fields,  
2124 and methodologies covered by the REB;

2125 (b) at least one member is knowledgeable in ethics;

2126 (c) at least one member is knowledgeable in the law (but that member should  
2127 not be the institution’s legal counsel or risk manager); and

2128 (d) at least one community member who has no affiliation with the institution.

2129 Each member shall be appointed to formally fulfill the requirements of only  
2130 one of the above categories.

2131 To ensure the independence of REB decision making, institutional senior  
2132 administrators shall not serve on the REB.

2133 **Application** This minimum requirement for REB membership brings to bear the necessary  
2134 basic background, expertise and perspectives to allow informed independent  
2135 reflection and decision making on the ethics of research involving humans.  
2136 While each member shall be formally appointed to provide the perspective of  
2137 one of the above categories as the member’s primary responsibility, they can  
2138 contribute to the review based on their experience, expertise or knowledge in  
2139 more than one of the categories above (Article 6.4[a] to [d]).

2140 The size of an REB may vary based on the diversity of disciplines, fields of  
2141 research and methodologies to be covered by the REB, as well as on the needs  
2142 of the institution. In appointing REB members, institutions should strive for  
2143 appropriate diversity. Institutions may need to exceed the minimum REB  
2144 membership requirements in order to ensure an adequate and thorough review,  
2145 or to respond to other local, provincial/territorial or federal legal or regulatory  
2146 requirements. For example, for REB review of clinical trials,  
2147 provincial/territorial or federal regulations may outline specific membership  
2148 requirements, in addition to the requirements set out in this Policy. Community  
2149 representation should be proportionate to the size of the REB. Institutions are  
2150 encouraged to establish a pool of substitute members (see below).

2151 **Relevant expertise in research content and methodology:** At least two  
2152 members should have the relevant knowledge and expertise to understand the  
2153 content area and methodology of the proposed or ongoing research, and to  
2154 assess the risks and potential benefits that may be associated with the research  
2155 (Article 6.4[a]). For example, REBs reviewing oncology research, education, or  
2156 topics involving Aboriginal peoples, or research using qualitative  
2157 methodologies, should have members that are knowledgeable and competent to  
2158 address those fields of research, disciplines and methodologies.

2159 **Knowledgeable in ethics:** Knowledge of ethics of research involving  
2160 humans is key within the REB membership as a whole. A member  
2161 knowledgeable in ethics (Article 6.4[b]) needs to have sufficient knowledge  
2162 to guide an REB in identifying and addressing ethics issues. A balance of  
2163 ethics theory, practice and experience offers the most effective path to  
2164 knowledge in ethics for REB membership. The kind and level of knowledge  
2165 or expertise needed on the REB will be commensurate with the types and  
2166 complexities of research the REB reviews. For example, a member  
2167 knowledgeable in ethics serving on a social sciences and humanities REB  
2168 may have different contextual and disciplinary knowledge in ethics than has  
2169 a member of a biomedical REB.

2170 **Knowledgeable in the law:** The role of the member knowledgeable in the  
2171 law (Article 6.4[c]) is to alert REBs to legal issues and their implications, for

2172 example – privacy issues, not to provide formal legal opinions or to serve as  
2173 legal counsel for the REB. To avoid undermining the independence and  
2174 credibility of the REB, the institution’s legal counsel or risk manager should  
2175 not be a member of the REB. In-house legal counsel might be seen to  
2176 identify too closely with the institution’s financial interest in having research  
2177 go forward or, conversely, may be unduly concerned with protecting the  
2178 institution from potential liability. Any external legal counsel hired on a  
2179 case-by-case basis by the institution should not serve as a member of that  
2180 institution’s REBs while working for the institution.

2181 In some instances, the legal issues identified by the REB will necessitate further  
2182 scrutiny and even formal legal advice by the legal counsel to the institution. Legal  
2183 liability is a separate issue for institutions to handle through mechanisms other than  
2184 the REB.

2185 **Community member:** The community member shall not be affiliated with the  
2186 institution and should not be currently engaged in scientific, legal or academic  
2187 work. The community member requirement (Article 6.4[d]) is essential to help  
2188 broaden the perspective and value base of the REB, and thus advances dialogue  
2189 with, and accountability to, local communities. The role of community  
2190 members on REBs during the research ethics process is both unique and at  
2191 arm’s length from the institution. Their primary role is to reflect the perspective  
2192 of the research participant. This is particularly important when research  
2193 participants are vulnerable and/or risks to research participants are high.

2194 To maintain effective community representation, the number of community  
2195 representatives should be commensurate with the size of an REB and should  
2196 increase as the size of an REB increases. Institutions should provide training  
2197 opportunities to community members. (See Article 6.7).

2198 In addition to a broad-based representation from the community, it is highly  
2199 desirable that institutions seek to appoint former research participants on REBs.  
2200 Their experience as research participants provides the REB with a vital  
2201 perspective and important contributions to the ethics review process.

2202 **Substitute members:** Institutions should consider the nomination of substitute  
2203 REB members so that REBs can continue to function when regular members  
2204 are unable to attend due to illness or other unforeseen eventualities. The use of  
2205 substitute members should not, however, alter the REB membership  
2206 composition as set out in this article. Substitute members should have the  
2207 appropriate knowledge, expertise and training to contribute to the ethics review  
2208 process.

2209 *Ad hoc Advisors*

2210 **Article 6.5** The REB should have provisions for appointing ad hoc advisors in the event that it  
2211 lacks the specific expertise or knowledge to review a research proposal  
2212 competently.

2213 **Application** In the event that the REB is reviewing a project that requires particular community  
2214 or research participant representation, or a project that requires specific expertise  
2215 not available from its members, it should have provisions for appointing ad hoc  
2216 advisors. The REB shall maintain its composition and representation as outlined in  
2217 Article 6.4.

2218 Ad hoc advisors are appointed for a specific task and for the duration of the  
2219 review. Should this occur regularly, the membership of the REB should be  
2220 modified to ensure appropriate expertise on the REB. For example, in cases where  
2221 review of research on topics related to Aboriginal peoples is regularly required, the  
2222 REB membership should be modified to ensure that relevant and competent  
2223 knowledge and expertise of Aboriginal cultures are captured within its regular  
2224 complement.

2225 While an ad hoc advisor may complement the REB through his or her experience,  
2226 knowledge or expertise, his or her input is a form of consultation that may or may  
2227 not be considered in the final decision of an REB. He or she is not an REB member  
2228 and, as such, does not necessarily have the knowledge and experience gained from  
2229 reviewing applications as a member. Ad hoc advisors should not be counted in the  
2230 quorum for an REB, nor be allowed to vote on REB decisions.

#### 2231 ***Terms of Appointment of REB Members***

2232 **Article 6.6** In appointing REB members, institutions shall establish their terms to allow for  
2233 continuity of the ethics review process.

2234 **Application** In appointing REB members, institutions should arrange the terms of members and  
2235 their rotation to balance the need to maintain continuity with the need to ensure  
2236 diversity of opinion and the opportunity to spread knowledge and experience  
2237 gained from REB membership throughout the institution and community. The REB  
2238 membership selection process should be fair and impartial.

2239 **Article 6.7** In appointing and renewing REB members, the institution should consider the  
2240 qualifications and expertise the REB needs, and should provide REB members  
2241 with necessary training to review the ethical issues raised by research proposals  
2242 that fall within the mandate of the REB.

2243 **Application** An REB should have adequate expertise, experience and training to understand  
2244 the research disciplines, methodologies and approaches of the research that it  
2245 considers for ethics review. While an REB possesses the necessary expertise  
2246 globally, each REB member brings specialized and complementary expertise  
2247 and knowledge, or relevant experience.

2248 Institutions should ensure that all REB members receive appropriate education  
2249 and training in the ethics review of research involving humans, to enable them  
2250 to fulfil their duties. This includes training all members in core principles and  
2251 understanding of this Policy, basic ethics standards, applicable institutional  
2252 policies, and legal or regulatory requirements. It includes an understanding of  
2253 the role and mandate of REBs and responsibilities of REB members. Training

- 2254 should be tailored to the types and complexities of the research the REB  
2255 reviews. This training should be offered both on the appointment of new  
2256 members and periodically throughout a member’s tenure.
- 2257 Institutions should promote and recognize the contribution of REB members to  
2258 the ethics review process, as a valued and essential component of the research  
2259 enterprise.
- 2260 **Article 6.8** The REB Chair is responsible for ensuring that the REB review process  
2261 conforms to the requirements of this Policy.
- 2262 **Application** The role of the REB Chair is to provide overall leadership for the REB and  
2263 facilitate the REB review process, based on institutional policies and  
2264 procedures and this Policy. The Chair should monitor the REB’s decisions for  
2265 consistency and ensure that these decisions are recorded accurately and that  
2266 they are clearly communicated to researchers in writing as soon as possible.  
2267 Institutions shall provide the necessary resources to enable the REB Chair to  
2268 fulfil his or her responsibilities.
- 2269 **REB Quorum**
- 2270 **Article 6.9** Institutions shall establish quorum rules for REBs subject to the range of  
2271 competence and knowledge required by this Policy to ensure the soundness and  
2272 integrity of the ethics review process.
- 2273 **Application** REB quorum shall be at least five members, shall meet the minimum  
2274 requirement of membership representation outlined in Article 6.4, and shall  
2275 take into account the presence at a given meeting of the specific expertise,  
2276 relevant competence and knowledge necessary to provide an adequate ethics  
2277 review of the proposals under consideration at that meeting.
- 2278 Ad hoc advisors, observers, research ethics administration staff and others  
2279 attending REB meetings should not be counted in the quorum for an REB. Nor  
2280 should they be allowed to vote on REB decisions (see Article 6.5). Decisions  
2281 without a quorum are not valid or binding.
- 2282 **REB Meetings and Attendance**
- 2283 **Article 6.10** REBs shall have regular meetings to discharge their responsibilities, and shall  
2284 normally meet face-to-face to review proposed research that is not assigned to  
2285 delegated review.
- 2286 **Application** Face-to-face meetings are essential for adequate discussion of and effective  
2287 REB decision making on research proposals, and for the collective education of  
2288 the REB. The face-to-face medium provides interactive dynamics that tend to  
2289 heighten the quality and effectiveness of communications and decisions.
- 2290 Planning regular meetings is essential to fulfilling REB responsibilities. A  
2291 schedule of REB meetings should be communicated to researchers for the

2292 planning of ethics review of their research. Regular attendance by REB  
2293 members at meetings is important, and frequent absences should be construed  
2294 as a notice of resignation. Unexpected circumstances such as emergencies may  
2295 prevent individual member(s) from attending the REB meeting. In these  
2296 exceptional cases, input from member(s) by other means (e.g. use of  
2297 technology) would be acceptable.

2298 Videoconferencing, teleconferencing and use of other technologies may be  
2299 regarded as necessary for meetings when REB members are geographically  
2300 dispersed and there is no other way of holding an effective REB meeting or  
2301 when exceptional or exigent circumstances significantly disrupt or limit the  
2302 feasibility of face-to-face REB meetings, such as during a public emergency.  
2303 All efforts should be made to ensure that technical difficulties do not prevent  
2304 the maintenance of quorum throughout the meeting. Use of such technologies  
2305 requires the Chair to ensure active participation of members not physically  
2306 present. Respecting the principles of this Policy, institutions should consider  
2307 developing written procedures for the occasional use of videoconferences or  
2308 other technologies by an REB.

2309 In the design phase of their research prior to the formal ethics review process,  
2310 researchers may consult informally with REBs. Such dialogue can for example  
2311 establish the stage at which REB review and approval would be required, or  
2312 facilitate the review. Such informal meetings cannot, however, substitute for  
2313 the formal review process.

2314 On occasion, REBs may need to consult other resources within or outside the  
2315 institution for advice and may invite experts to attend their meetings. REBs  
2316 should consider whether the institutional functions of other individuals  
2317 attending their meetings could exercise undue influence or provide elements of  
2318 power imbalances or coercion that would affect REB review, deliberations and  
2319 decisions. However, individuals who are not REB members should be aware of  
2320 how their institutional functions, how their roles may be perceived at REB  
2321 meetings, and how they have the potential to unduly influence REB members  
2322 in their decision making procedures. (See Chapter 7).

2323 REBs should also hold general meetings, retreats and educational workshops to  
2324 enhance educational opportunities that may benefit the overall operation of the  
2325 REB, discuss any general issues arising out of the REB's activities, or revise  
2326 relevant policies.

## 2327 **B. Procedures for REB Review**

### 2328 **Initial Research Ethics Review**

2329 **Article 6.11** Researchers shall submit their research project for REB review and approval of  
2330 its ethical acceptability prior to the start of recruitment of research participants  
2331 or access to data. Subject to Article 10.1, REB review is not required for the  
2332 initial exploratory phase involving contact with individuals or communities  
2333 intended to establish research partnerships or the design of a research study.



2334 **Application** REB review and approval of the ethical acceptability of research is required  
2335 before recruitment or the formal data collection involving research participants.  
2336 Similarly, as an integral component of their research design, researchers may  
2337 undertake pilot studies involving research participants whose data will be used  
2338 in the full implementation of a larger study. For the conduct of such pilot  
2339 studies, researchers should seek consent from prospective participants and  
2340 obtain REB approval before recruitment or the formal data collection involving  
2341 research participants.

2342 Some types of research using quantitative, qualitative research, or a  
2343 combination of these methods as well as collaborative or community-based  
2344 research (see Chapters 9 and 10) may entail, prior contact and dialogue with  
2345 individuals or communities of interest as a normal and integral component to  
2346 establish research collaborations or partnerships prior to the actual design of the  
2347 study. Other research may at their initial stages not involve humans, but require  
2348 for example engaging the research team, setting up equipment, and other  
2349 preparatory stages. This may precede REB review.

2350 **Article 6.12** REBs shall follow a research ethics review process proportionate to the level of  
2351 risk in research under review.

2352 **Application** REBs shall assess the level of risk that the research under review poses to  
2353 participants to determine the appropriate proportionate approach to use in  
2354 the ethics review. (See Article 2.9).

2355 With the support of their institutions, REBs may develop their own mechanisms  
2356 under which delegation of the conduct of review, decision making, and the  
2357 associated reporting process will occur. Those mechanisms and procedures  
2358 should be made public. It is the REB, through its chair, that decides on the level  
2359 of review to be utilized.

2360 Two levels of ethics review may apply:

2361 1) Full REB review

2362 Ethics review by the full REB should be the default requirement for research  
2363 involving human participants.

2364 2) Delegated REB review of minimal-risk research

2365 The REB delegates ethics review to an individual or individuals. Delegates  
2366 may be selected from among the REB membership or at the faculty or  
2367 department level.

2368 Where it is determined that the research is of minimal risk (defined in Chapter 2  
2369 of this Policy), an REB generally may authorize a delegated ethics review and  
2370 decision making, in accordance with its institutional policies. The REB may  
2371 decide that its Chair or another individual(s) (e.g. delegated reviewer[s]) may  
2372 review and approve categories of research that are confidently expected to  
2373 involve minimal risk. Delegated reviewers may call on other reviewers within the

- 2374 REB or revert back to the full REB.
- 2375 In delegating the conduct of review, the REB should carefully select delegated  
2376 reviewer(s) and should ensure that all delegated reviewers who are not members  
2377 of the REB have the appropriate expertise and training to review all aspects of  
2378 the proposal consistent with this Policy. In selecting delegated reviewers and in  
2379 the process of delegation, special attention should be given to situations of real,  
2380 potential or perceived conflict of interests as outlined in Article 7.3.
- 2381 Examples of categories that may be delegated for ethics review include:
- 2382 ▪ research that is confidently expected to involve minimal risk;
  - 2383 ▪ minimal-risk changes to approved research;
  - 2384 ▪ annual renewals of approved minimal risk research;
  - 2385 ▪ annual renewals of more than minimal risk research where the research  
2386 will no longer involve new interventions to current research participants,  
2387 does not involve the recruitment of new research participants, and the  
2388 remaining research activities are limited to data analysis;
  - 2389 ▪ evidence that conditions or other requirements laid down by the REB in an  
2390 initial review have been met.
- 2391 An institution may decide that ethics review of research that is carried out by  
2392 undergraduate students as part of their course work may be reviewed by a  
2393 delegated review process that complies with this Policy. The REB should set  
2394 out criteria for determining which categories of research proposals are suitable  
2395 for consideration through this means, and establish procedures, such as who is  
2396 responsible for implementing and overseeing the approval mechanisms. Where  
2397 an undergraduate student is carrying out research that is part of a faculty  
2398 member's own research program, such research should be reviewed by the  
2399 regular REB procedures.
- 2400 An REB that implements a delegated review process shall require that the  
2401 actions and decisions of the delegated reviewer(s) be well documented and  
2402 formally reported to the full REB, through its chair, in a timely and appropriate  
2403 manner, thus permitting the REB to maintain oversight over the decisions made  
2404 on its behalf so as to protect the interests of participants. Accountability  
2405 requires that, regardless of the review strategy, the REB continues to be  
2406 responsible for the ethics of all research involving human participants within its  
2407 jurisdiction.
- 2408 **Article 6.13** The REB shall function impartially, provide a fair hearing to those involved  
2409 and provide reasoned and appropriately documented opinions and decisions.  
2410 REBs should make their decisions on the ethical acceptability of research in a  
2411 timely manner, and shall communicate approvals and refusals to researchers in  
2412 writing in print or by electronic means.
- 2413 **Application** The REB shall accommodate reasonable requests from researchers and may

2414 initiate invitations to researchers to participate in discussions about their  
2415 proposals, but researchers shall not be present when the REB is making its  
2416 decision. When an REB is considering a negative decision, it shall provide the  
2417 researcher with all the reasons for doing so and give the researcher an  
2418 opportunity to reply before making a final decision. (See Article 6.17).

2419 In the event that a minority within the REB membership considers a research  
2420 project unethical, even though it is acceptable to a majority of members, an  
2421 effort should be made to reach consensus. Consultation with the researcher,  
2422 external advice, or further reflection by the REB may be helpful. If  
2423 disagreement persists, a decision should be made in accordance with the  
2424 process mandated by the institution. In such instances, the minority position  
2425 may be communicated to the researcher.

2426 Participation by the researcher in such discussions is often very helpful to both  
2427 REBs and researchers. Such discussions may result in a deferral of the REB's  
2428 decision until the researcher has considered the discussions and possibly  
2429 modified the proposal. Such discussions are an essential part of the educational  
2430 role of the REB.

#### 2431 **Continuing Ethics Review**

2432 **Article 6.14** The REB shall make the final determination as to the nature and frequency  
2433 of the continuing ethics review in accordance with a proportionate approach  
2434 to ethics review. At minimum, continuing ethics review shall consist of an  
2435 annual status report on the research, followed by an end-of-study report.

2436 **Application** Research is subject to continuing ethics review from the date of initial REB  
2437 approval until completion of the study. (See Article 2.8) At the time of first  
2438 review, the REB has the authority to determine the term of approval and the  
2439 level at which continuing ethics review occurs in accordance with a  
2440 proportionate approach to research ethics review. For research projects  
2441 lasting longer than one year, researchers should submit at minimum an  
2442 annual report with sufficient details to enable the REB to make an informed  
2443 judgment about the ethical acceptability of the research. For research lasting  
2444 less than one year, an end-of-study report may suffice.

2445 For some types of research (e.g. qualitative research or longitudinal  
2446 research), there may be some difficulty in establishing start or end dates. For  
2447 these cases, the REB should work with researchers to determine a reasonable  
2448 timeline for continuing ethics review and for determining the completion  
2449 date dependent on the discipline and method of study. The reporting  
2450 schedule for continuing ethics review may be adjusted throughout the life of  
2451 the project. This would be necessary, for example, if the risk level of the  
2452 research increases as a result of the addition of new procedures.

2453 Research that involves minimal or no risk to the research participant should  
2454 be held to the minimum requirements for continuing ethics review, that is, a  
2455 short annual report. Following a proportionate approach, an REB has the

2456 option of requesting more frequent and/or more substantive reports if  
2457 necessary. Research that poses greater-than-minimal risk may require a more  
2458 extensive continuing ethics review. This could include, for example, more  
2459 frequent reporting to the REB, monitoring and review of the consent  
2460 process, review of participant records and site visits. Other reporting  
2461 mechanisms for continuing ethics review may be required by funders or  
2462 sponsors.

2463 While REBs make the final decision about the nature and frequency of  
2464 continuing ethics review, continuing ethics review should be understood as a  
2465 collective responsibility, to be carried out with a common interest in  
2466 maintaining the highest ethical standards. For example, researchers have a  
2467 responsibility to monitor their research to ensure that the research is conducted  
2468 in an ethical manner. Researchers are responsible for supervising all team  
2469 members in the application of the research procedures and for ensuring that  
2470 they are versed in the conduct of ethical research. Institutions should provide  
2471 necessary resources to REBs to assist them in fulfilling their continuing ethics  
2472 review responsibilities.

### 2473 **Departures from Approved Research**

2474 **Article 6.15** REBs shall make decisions on the ethical acceptability of researchers’  
2475 departures from the originally approved research in accordance with a  
2476 proportionate approach to research ethics review.

2477 **Application** Three categories of departures from approved research may occur during the  
2478 conduct of research. These include (1) unanticipated or unexpected events or  
2479 issues that the researcher did not anticipate or expect when originally  
2480 submitting the research for ethics review; (2) changes that the researcher  
2481 makes to the approved research; and (3) deviations from approved research  
2482 when unavoidable single-incident departures from the originally planned  
2483 research procedure occur.

2484 In the conduct of their approved research, researchers should be cognizant of  
2485 the requirement to report to their REB, in a timely manner, departures from  
2486 approved research that have ethical implications and/or change the level of  
2487 risk to participants, which could adversely affect their welfare. Any non-  
2488 trivial or substantive changes to the research should not be implemented  
2489 without documented approval or acceptance by the REB, except when  
2490 necessary to eliminate an immediate hazard(s) to the research participants.

2491 Institutions shall have an established process for the REB to review and take  
2492 appropriate action regarding departures from approved research, including  
2493 reporting to senior administration and other administrative units where  
2494 necessary and appropriate.

2495 The level of REB review required to assess the changes or deviations from  
2496 approved research that have ethical implications and/or change the level of  
2497 risk to participants shall follow a proportionate approach to ethics

2498 assessment, including changes to the continuing ethics review process. It is  
2499 not the size of the change that dictates the review process, but rather the  
2500 ethical implications and risk associated with the proposed change. In  
2501 general, regardless of the term of approval, projects will need to be re-  
2502 reviewed or amended if the context surrounding the research project  
2503 changes. Although the REB holds responsibility for reviewing the ethics of  
2504 research in light of changes in context, the researcher has a responsibility to  
2505 be familiar with the environment in which the research is being conducted  
2506 and to notify the REB about changes that may affect the ethics of the  
2507 research.

2508 The final decision as to which type of deviations to report to the REB is up  
2509 to the REB. The report to the REB should include a description of the  
2510 incident, including details of how the researcher(s) dealt with the situation.  
2511 The point in reporting is informational and educational; it is to enable the  
2512 REB to better protect research participants in future research projects.  
2513 Depending on the nature of the event or issue, REBs may require that  
2514 researchers adjust their procedures to prevent such events from re-occurring  
2515 during the research project. An REB may stipulate a timeframe for the  
2516 reporting of such events.

2517 In the case of clinical trials, unexpected or unanticipated events and  
2518 reporting requirements are defined and addressed in Chapter 11 of this  
2519 Policy. In some cases, such events may be identified by Data and Safety  
2520 Monitoring Boards or study sponsors. If the event has immediate  
2521 implications for the safety of research participants, the REB may require that  
2522 the research be halted until the matter can be addressed. (See Articles 11.3  
2523 and 11.4).

2524 In still other kinds of research (especially in the social sciences and  
2525 humanities), it is not always clear before the research is undertaken what  
2526 events may occur during the course of the research project. Here, researchers  
2527 should report any event that occurred as a result of the research and that may  
2528 affect the welfare of the research participants. In case of doubt on the  
2529 potential impact of the departure from approved research on the level of risk  
2530 to participants, researchers should consult with their REBs. Researchers and  
2531 REBs may work together to develop a list of types of reportable events.

## 2532 **Record Keeping of REB Documents**

2533 **Article 6.16** REBs shall prepare and maintain comprehensive records, including all  
2534 documentation related to the studies submitted to the REB for review,  
2535 attendance at all REB meetings, and accurate minutes reflecting research  
2536 ethics decisions. Where the REB denies ethics approval for a research  
2537 proposal, the minutes shall include the reasons for this decision.

2538 **Application** REBs need to act, and to be seen to be acting, fairly and reasonably.  
2539 Institutions shall provide REBs the necessary resources to enable them to  
2540 maintain complete study files, including the original application, as well as

2541 annual and end-of-study reports. This should be guided by their institutional  
2542 record-keeping policies and other relevant legal or regulatory requirements  
2543 when deciding the retention period of their files. Minutes and other relevant  
2544 documentation shall be accessible to authorized representatives of the  
2545 institution, researchers, sponsors and funders when applicable to assist  
2546 internal and external audits or research monitoring and to facilitate  
2547 reconsideration or appeals.

2548 The minutes of REB meetings shall clearly document the REB’s decisions  
2549 and any dissents, and the reasons for them. REB decisions should be  
2550 supported by clear references (e.g. date of decision, title of project),  
2551 documentary basis for decision (i.e., documents or progress reports received  
2552 and reviewed), the plan for continuing ethics review and timelines, reasons  
2553 for decisions, and any conditions or limitations attached to the approval.  
2554 Providing reasons for REB decisions is optional when ethics approval is  
2555 granted.

2556 REBs should maintain reports and decisions on departures from approved  
2557 research, including a description of the unexpected or unanticipated event,  
2558 change or deviation; details of how the researcher dealt with the situation;  
2559 and the REB’s approval or acceptance of such changes.

2560 The research ethics administration should also maintain general records related  
2561 to REB membership and qualifications of members (e.g. copies of curriculum  
2562 vitae, participation in training).

### 2563 **C. Reconsideration and Appeals**

2564 Where researchers do not receive ethics approval upon initial review, or receive approval  
2565 with conditions that they find compromise the feasibility or integrity of the proposed  
2566 research, they are entitled to reconsideration by the REB. If that is not successful, they may  
2567 appeal to a separate review board.

#### 2568 **Reconsideration of REB Decisions**

2569 **Article 6.17** Researchers have the right to request, and REBs have an obligation to provide,  
2570 reconsideration of decisions affecting a research project.

2571 **Application** REBs should follow principles of natural and procedural justice in their decision  
2572 making. This includes providing a reasonable opportunity to be heard; reasoned  
2573 grounds for the decisions, and the opportunity for rebuttal. (See Article 6.13).  
2574 Researchers and REBs should make every effort to resolve disagreements they  
2575 may have through deliberation, consultation or advice. If a disagreement cannot  
2576 be resolved by the researcher and REB, the researcher shall have the option of  
2577 appealing the REB decision through the established appeal mechanism. (See  
2578 Article 6.18).

2579 In the case of protocols reviewed by delegated review, requests by the  
2580 researcher for reconsideration of a delegated review decision should be

2581 forwarded by the researcher for review by the full REB. The onus is on  
2582 researchers to justify on what grounds they request reconsideration and indicate  
2583 the breaches to the research ethics process or the elements of the delegated  
2584 REB decision that are not supported by this Policy.

## 2585 **Appeal of REB Decisions**

2586 **Article 6.18** Institutions shall have an established mechanism and a procedure in place for  
2587 entertaining appeals from researchers when they cannot reach agreement with  
2588 REBs through discussion and REB reconsideration.

2589 **Application** In cases when researchers and REBs cannot reach agreement through  
2590 discussion and reconsideration, an institution shall provide access to an  
2591 established appeal process for the review of an REB decision.

2592 By nature of its role and lack of frequency of meeting, an appeal body is  
2593 typically ad hoc. Therefore, the appeal mechanism may be an ad hoc committee  
2594 or a permanent committee, as long as individuals involved in the appeal  
2595 process have the relevant knowledge and competence to review REB decisions  
2596 and procedures based on this Policy. (See Article 6.4). An appeal body shall be  
2597 established by the same body that created the REB. Members of the REB  
2598 whose decision is under appeal shall not serve on that appeal body.

2599 It should be stressed that the appeal process is not a substitute for REBs and  
2600 researchers working closely together to ensure high-quality research, nor is it a  
2601 forum to merely seek a second opinion.

2602 Small institutions may wish to explore regional cooperation or alliances,  
2603 including the sharing of appeal boards. If two institutions decide to use each  
2604 other's REB as an appeal board, a formal letter of agreement between  
2605 institutions is required.

2606 It is not the role of the three federal research Agencies who are responsible for  
2607 this Policy to entertain any appeals of REB decisions.

2608 **Article 6.19** The appeal body shall have the authority to approve, reject or request  
2609 modifications to negative decisions made by an REB. An appeal body can  
2610 overturn negative decisions made by an REB. Its decision shall be final.

2611 **Application** Researchers have the right to request an appeal of an REB decision once the  
2612 period of reconsideration has expired or the reconsideration process has been  
2613 exhausted and the REB has issued a final decision. The onus is on the  
2614 researchers to justify on what grounds – for example, content, procedures,  
2615 conflict of interests of REB member(s), or disagreement on interpretation of  
2616 this Policy – they request an appeal and indicate the breaches to the research  
2617 ethics process or the elements of the REB decision that are not supported by  
2618 this Policy.

2619 The appeal body shall function impartially, provide a fair hearing to those

2620 involved, and provide reasoned and appropriately documented opinions and  
2621 decisions. Both the researcher and a representative of the REB shall be granted  
2622 the opportunity to address the appeal body, but cannot be present when the  
2623 appeal body deliberates and makes a decision. Appeal body decisions shall be  
2624 final, and should be communicated in writing (in print or by electronic means)  
2625 to researchers and to the REB the decision of which was appealed.

#### 2626 **D. Research Ethics Review During Publicly Declared** 2627 **Emergencies**

2628 There is a growing awareness of the need for institutional planning to respond to public  
2629 emergencies and the associated potential challenges for research ethics review. Public  
2630 emergencies are extraordinary events that arise suddenly or unexpectedly and require  
2631 urgent or quick responses to minimize devastation. Examples include hurricanes and other  
2632 natural disasters, large communicable disease outbreaks, catastrophic civil disorders, bio-  
2633 hazardous releases, environmental disasters and humanitarian emergencies. They tend to be  
2634 time-limited. They may severely disrupt or may destroy normal institutional, community  
2635 and individual lives.

2636 This section addresses research ethics review within the context of the official declaration  
2637 of public emergencies, which initiates emergency procedures and provides special  
2638 responsibilities and powers to authorized officials in accordance with provisions of the law.  
2639 Given the extraordinary circumstances that research participants are potentially subjected to  
2640 in public emergencies, special attention and effort should be given to upholding the core  
2641 principles of respect for persons, concern for welfare, and justice when reviewing the ethics  
2642 of research to be conducted in such emergencies. It should be noted that the following  
2643 articles and the requirement for consent will not apply to research undertaken by federal,  
2644 provincial and territorial public health officials operating under statutory powers during  
2645 public health emergencies.

#### 2646 **Institutional Emergency Research Ethics Preparedness Plans**

2647 **Article 6.20** In concert with their researchers, institutions and their REBs should develop  
2648 emergency research ethics preparedness plans. Research ethics review  
2649 during emergencies may follow modified procedures and practices.

2650 **Application** Preparedness plans should outline policies and procedures for addressing  
2651 research ethics review during and concerning public health outbreaks,  
2652 natural disasters and other public emergencies. Research ethics policies and  
2653 procedures and their implementation should adhere rigorously to a rule of  
2654 reasonable, fair and principled design and use for emergency purposes.

2655 Through their emergency preparedness plans, institutions, researchers and  
2656 their REBs need to anticipate the pressures, time constraints, priorities and  
2657 logistical challenges that may arise to ensure quality, timely, proportionate  
2658 and appropriate ethics review. The plan and its policies should proactively  
2659 address basic operational questions. Examples include, but are not limited  
2660 to, how emergencies may affect research and research ethics review in  
2661 institutions; how REBs conduct business or meet; what research needs



2662 should be planned in advance of, or done after, an emergency; what  
2663 research, if any, needs to be done during an emergency; what qualifies as  
2664 time-sensitive or “essential” research; what procedures govern the ethics  
2665 review; and what evaluation methods need to be developed. It is important  
2666 to pilot test the emergency procedures and plans in advance.

2667 Policies should try to anticipate the extraordinary circumstances or demands  
2668 occasioned by emergencies and set priorities among them. For example,  
2669 REBs should try to work collaboratively with researchers who would likely  
2670 be involved in emergency-type research such as researchers in relevant  
2671 biomedical, environmental and social science areas, and what special  
2672 consent provisions may be made in emergency research. (See Chapter 3).  
2673 Institutions might consider the use of an instrument to identify and triage the  
2674 kinds of research that should be designed before, undertaken during, or  
2675 conducted after officially declared public emergencies. Likewise, a plan to  
2676 help prioritize REB reviews during emergencies should consider the  
2677 following:

- 2678 ▪ what constitutes “essential” research during the emergency;
- 2679 ▪ the initial review process of new research projects arising from the  
2680 emergency (e.g. research involving interviews with first responders and  
2681 victims to understand human response during a disaster, such as a  
2682 tornado or earthquake);
- 2683 ▪ continuing ethics review of research undertaken prior to the occurrence  
2684 of the emergency; and
- 2685 ▪ the review process for departures from approved research, because new  
2686 information may become available very rapidly during emergencies.  
2687 (See Article 6.15).

2688 REB procedures may warrant reasonable adjustments to address the timing,  
2689 locale, expertise, form and scope of review, and the holding of REB  
2690 meetings during emergency situations. (See Article 6.10). Special attention  
2691 could be given to REB procedures to review and approve research (e.g. full  
2692 or delegated ethics reviews, quorum rules, or special agreements with other  
2693 institutions), while considering the impact of the emergency on research  
2694 participants, researchers, REB members, institutional staff and others. REB  
2695 members may become unavailable (e.g. due to illness, relocation or  
2696 quarantine by public authorities). Institutions and REBs should explore the  
2697 nomination of substitute REB members and ad hoc advisors with relevant  
2698 expertise (see Articles 6.4 and 6.5), negotiate reciprocity agreements with  
2699 other institutions for REB reviews (see Article 8.1), and revisit how  
2700 scholarly review would be applied in such instances.

2701 Research ethics review should be proportionate to the necessities occasioned  
2702 by the emergency because of the critical interplay between public urgencies,  
2703 essential research, and a continuing commitment to the core principles even  
2704 in the face of acute public necessity. Research ethics review during or

2705 regarding public emergencies is even more important than under normal  
2706 circumstances and may require even greater care and scrutiny, since  
2707 everyone (research participants, researchers and REB members themselves)  
2708 may be rendered more vulnerable by the nature of the emergency.

2709 **Application of Research Ethics Review Policy and Procedures in Publicly Declared**  
2710 **Emergencies**

2711 **Article 6.21** The application of research ethics policy and procedures for emergencies is  
2712 limited to the duration of officially declared public emergencies and should  
2713 cease as soon after the declared emergency as is feasible.

2714 **Application** Research ethics review policies and procedures for declared emergencies  
2715 should be applied only to compelling public necessities occasioned by a  
2716 public emergency. Public emergencies for the purposes of this Policy are  
2717 limited to those that are declared by an authorized public official. This  
2718 section therefore applies to narrow, limited and exceptional circumstances.  
2719 Because emergencies present extraordinary public risks that warrant special  
2720 responses, legislation or public policies usually require that they be  
2721 officially proclaimed or declared. The exercise of those responsibilities may  
2722 temporarily modify normal procedures or practices.

2723 **Respecting Core Principles: Limiting Exceptions**

2724 **Article 6.22** REBs should give special care to requests for exceptions to the principles  
2725 and procedures outlined in this Policy during publicly declared emergencies.

2726 **Application** Especially during times of emergency, researchers, REBs and institutions  
2727 need to be vigilant and exercise due diligence in respecting ethical  
2728 principles, procedures, and the law in effect during such emergency. To  
2729 preserve the values, purpose and protection that the principles of this Policy  
2730 advance, the onus for demonstrating a reasonable public-emergency  
2731 exception to an ethical principle or procedure should fall on those claiming  
2732 the exception.

2733 To guide fair and reasonable implementation for emergency circumstances,  
2734 any exception to or infringement of ethics principles and procedures need to  
2735 be demonstrably justified by those urging the infringement. Sometimes a  
2736 proposed infringement or exception will not be justified for research  
2737 purposes. Justified exceptions to or infringement of ethics principles and  
2738 procedures should correspond directly, and be calibrated, to the benefit  
2739 targeted by the goal of the policy. Exceptions should be narrowly tailored to  
2740 address the necessities occasioned by the public emergency, such that the  
2741 least restrictive or least intrusive means necessary to achieve the policy goal  
2742 are relied on. This approach – consistent with international bioethics and  
2743 human rights norms – maximizes respect of ethical principles and helps to  
2744 ensure that exceptions or infringements and the means to implement them  
2745 are not unduly broad, overreaching or unjustifiably invasive.

2746 Recognizing and respecting the principle of justice means that research  
2747 ethics review policies and procedures for publicly declared emergencies  
2748 shall be used in a manner that is not discriminatory or arbitrary. The  
2749 commitment to justice advances a fair and balanced distribution of risks and  
2750 potential benefits even in the face of public emergencies.

2751 REBs and researchers should be aware that individuals, potential  
2752 participants, researchers, and institutions that may not normally be  
2753 considered vulnerable may become so by the very nature of public  
2754 emergencies. Those already vulnerable may become acutely so. REBs and  
2755 researchers should ensure appropriate evaluation of the risks and potential  
2756 benefits posed by any proposed research, including provisions for greater-  
2757 than-normal attention to risk, where applicable. The increased public risks  
2758 and devastation on which public emergencies are declared threaten  
2759 autonomy and physical, emotional, institutional and social welfare or safety.  
2760 They also bring inherent tensions and pressures that may impact deliberative  
2761 decision making. Research ethics policy and review for public emergencies  
2762 should recognize that in such situations the affected population, as  
2763 individuals or as a body, may become more vulnerable. Therefore, the need  
2764 to respect participants and be concerned about their welfare shall be  
2765 accordingly addressed. (See Article 4.6 ).

2766 **Endnote**

---

<sup>1</sup> Memorandum of Understanding on the Roles and Responsibilities in the Management of Federal Grants and Awards at [www.nserc-crsng.gc.ca/NSERC-CRSNG/Policies-Politiques/MOURoles-ProtocolRoles/index\\_eng.asp](http://www.nserc-crsng.gc.ca/NSERC-CRSNG/Policies-Politiques/MOURoles-ProtocolRoles/index_eng.asp)



# Chapter 7

2767

2768

## CONFLICT OF INTERESTS

2769 This chapter addresses ethical issues that can arise when research activities and other  
2770 activities conflict. A conflict of interests may arise when activities or situations place a  
2771 person or institution in a real, potential or perceived conflict between their duties or  
2772 responsibilities related to research and their personal, institutional or other interests.  
2773 Conflict of interests may occur when individuals' judgments and actions or institutions'  
2774 actions in relation to research are, or could be, affected by personal, institutional or other  
2775 interests, including, but not limited to, business, commercial or financial interests,  
2776 pertaining to these individuals, their family members, their friends, or their former, current  
2777 or prospective professional associations – or of the institution itself.

2778 Conflicts of interests must be assessed when conducting research involving humans to  
2779 ensure protection of the potential participant and integrity of the research. Conflicts of  
2780 interests that jeopardize these protections are contrary to the core principles on which this  
2781 policy is based. In light of this, the first step is to avoid or prevent being in a condition of  
2782 conflict of interests, if possible. When it is not possible to avoid such a condition, then the  
2783 next step is to disclose the conflict to the appropriate persons which will then result in  
2784 appropriate efforts to minimize or manage the conflict of interests.

2785 Researchers and students hold trust relationships, either directly or indirectly, with research  
2786 participants, research sponsors, institutions, their professional bodies and society. These  
2787 relationships based on trust between parties can be put at risk by conflicts of interests that  
2788 may compromise independence, objectivity or ethical duties of loyalty. Although the  
2789 potential for such conflicts has always existed, pressures on researchers, for example, to  
2790 suspend dissemination of research outcomes or use inappropriate recruitment strategies,  
2791 heighten concerns regarding ethical behaviour.

2792 Institutions involved in research, too, hold trust relationships with research participants,  
2793 research sponsors, researchers and society. These institutions may have financial or  
2794 reputational interests that conflict with the institution's obligations that may include  
2795 provision of education, the promotion of research, as well as their obligation to protect and  
2796 respect human dignity as characterized by the core principles of this Policy. For example,  
2797 institutions may experience pressures to attract particular research funding or certain types  
2798 of research activities that are self-sustaining, which may compromise their independence  
2799 and public trust. Institutions have an obligation to ensure that the ethical conduct of  
2800 research is not compromised by real, potential or perceived conflicts of interests.

2801 The research ethics board (REB), as an entity, or as the members that make up the board,  
2802 also hold trust relationships with research participants, research sponsors, researchers and  
2803 society. The REB can also find itself in a conflict of interests.

2804 Conflicts of interests may jeopardize the integrity of research and the protection offered  
2805 participants. Conflicts that create divided loyalties may distract researchers, REBs and  
2806 institutions from concern for the welfare of participants and are contrary to the core  
2807 principles on which this Policy is based. Failures to disclose and manage conflicts may  
2808 impede the informed and autonomous choices of individuals to participate in research.  
2809 Potential participants need to know about real, potential or perceived conflicts of interest in  
2810 order to consent. (See Article 3.2 [e]). Conflicts of interests may also undermine the respect  
2811 for participants that is fundamental to the principle of justice.

2812 Researchers, their institutions and REBs should identify and address conflicts of interests –  
2813 real, potential or perceived – to discharge professional and institutional obligations,  
2814 maintain public confidence and trust, and ensure accountability. In some cases, the conflict  
2815 (real, potential or perceived) cannot be managed and the institutions, the researcher or the  
2816 REB member may need to abandon one of the interests in conflict. Where necessary, the  
2817 researcher may have to manage the conflict of interests either by disclosing it to participant  
2818 or removing himself/herself from the research.

2819 This chapter addresses Conflict of Interests for Institutions in Part A, for REB members in  
2820 Part B, and for Researchers in Part C.

## 2821 **A. Institutions and Conflicts of Interests**

2822 **Article 7.1** Institutions shall develop and implement conflicts of interests policies  
2823 including procedures to identify, prevent, disclose and manage conflicts of  
2824 interests that may affect research involving humans. All parties should act in a  
2825 transparent manner in identifying and addressing conflicts of interests.  
2826 Institutions should make their written conflict of interests policies and  
2827 procedures publicly available to all members of the research enterprise,  
2828 including research participants, REBs, researchers, administrators, research  
2829 sponsors and others.

2830 **Application** To meet obligations to protect research participants, institutional policies  
2831 should address the roles, responsibilities and process for disclosing and  
2832 managing institutional conflicts of interests relevant to research involving  
2833 humans, including disclosure to REBs.

2834 When developing institutional policies and procedures on conflicts of  
2835 interests, institutions should clarify the roles and the distribution of  
2836 responsibilities and clarify associated potential for conflicts. This clarity  
2837 should reduce or eliminate the possibility for confusion of roles that may  
2838 ultimately lead to conflicting obligations. Ideally, institutional policies will  
2839 organize roles, responsibilities, reporting lines and accountabilities to  
2840 minimize, manage or avoid conflicts of interests. (See Articles 6.1, 6.2 and  
2841 Article 7.2).

2842 Measures to manage conflicts of interests should reflect the inherent threat of  
2843 conflict of interests to research participants, as well as to the scientific and  
2844 scholarly integrity and credibility of research. Measures to manage conflicts of  
2845 interests should be proportionate to the risks. Institutions should consider the

2846 following measures to address conflicts of interests at the institutional level that  
2847 are germane to research involving human participants:

- 2848 ▪ Create central institutional mechanisms, such as a competent institutional  
2849 authority, a conflict of interests committee, or other delegated bodies  
2850 within the institution to help identify, evaluate and manage conflicts of  
2851 interests;
- 2852 ▪ Refine or redesign roles, responsibilities and reporting lines to avoid,  
2853 minimize or manage the potential for conflicts;
- 2854 ▪ Prevent or minimize conflict of interests in institutional design and  
2855 structuring when creating new roles, responsibilities or relationships;
- 2856 ▪ Apply barriers to insulate potentially conflicting roles and responsibilities;
- 2857 ▪ Institute requirements that individuals involved in the conduct of research  
2858 withdraw from, or do not participate in, roles or functions unduly  
2859 compromised or disabled by any real, potential or perceived conflict.

2860 Conflict of interests policies and procedures should be developed in a  
2861 transparent manner.

2862 The goal of such policies is to avoid conflict of interests where possible, or  
2863 alternatively, to identify and disclose real, potential or perceived institutional  
2864 conflicts of interests, to make them transparent and open to scrutiny and to  
2865 provide mechanisms to evaluate and manage them. Institutions must respect  
2866 the autonomy of the REB decision making processes and ensure the REB has  
2867 ongoing and adequate financial and administrative resources to fulfil its  
2868 duties. (See Articles 6.1 and 6.2).

2869 **Article 7.2** Institutions should ensure that real, potential or perceived institutional  
2870 conflicts of interests that may affect research involving humans are reported  
2871 to the REB through the established conflict of interest mechanisms. The REB  
2872 shall consider whether the institutional conflict of interests should be  
2873 disclosed to potential participants as part of the consent process.

2874 **Application** An institutional conflict of interests involves a conflict between at least two  
2875 substantial institutional obligations that cannot be adequately fulfilled  
2876 without compromising one or both obligations. Conflicts may occur when  
2877 pursuing particular goals, for instance, the pursuit of two different “goods.”  
2878 For example, seeking to expand its donors’ base for the development of the  
2879 infrastructure of the university may conflict with the conduct of research.  
2880 Conflicts may be real, potential or perceived. Institutional conflicts of  
2881 interests may compromise duties of loyalty and lead to biased judgments.  
2882 Conflicts may also undermine public trust in the ability of the institution to  
2883 carry out its missions, operations and ethical responsibilities in research  
2884 involving humans.

2885 Institutions may be in conflict of interests, for example, when (a) they sponsor

2886 a research study; (b) they manage the intellectual property that forms the basis  
2887 of a study or they stand to benefit from intellectual property resulting from the  
2888 research; (c) the institutions hold equity holdings in companies and/or receive  
2889 major donations, or (d) through the roles or responsibilities of the institutional  
2890 official responsible for research development (e.g. vice-president responsible  
2891 for fundraising with industry) and for oversight of research involving research  
2892 participants.

2893 Acting in a professional role within the institution, an individual is in a conflict  
2894 of interests when this individual (e.g. university president, vice-president, dean  
2895 of a faculty or department head) is subject to competing incentives or functions.  
2896 These may significantly interfere with the impartial exercise of duties,  
2897 including legal and ethical obligations within the institutional structure. An  
2898 institutional conflict of interests may, thus, directly divide one’s professional  
2899 duties and loyalties when the incentive structure of the institution places  
2900 individuals who have responsibilities for functions or actions that may be in  
2901 conflict with one another in conflicts of loyalty and function. The conflict may  
2902 be chronic, relating to recurring situations resulting from by the institutional  
2903 structure, or it may be triggered by a unique situation that is not likely to recur.

2904 Any member of an institution, a senior administrator, researcher, REB  
2905 member or any other individual who is aware of potential sources of  
2906 institutional conflicts of interests that may affect research involving humans  
2907 should refer to the institutional policy for proper steps to inform the REB of  
2908 such conflicts. Institutional policies shall address when the disclosure of the  
2909 conflict to the REB is appropriate. The disclosure of the institutional conflict  
2910 of interests prior to the actual review may jeopardize the independent  
2911 decision making of the REB. For example, it might be better that an REB  
2912 not know prior to its review of a research proposal that the sponsor of the  
2913 research is considering an endowment or major donation to that institution.  
2914 In other instances, prior disclosure to the REB will be necessary for the REB  
2915 deliberations and decision making regarding disclosure of such a conflict in  
2916 the consent process. Identification, disclosure, evaluation and management  
2917 of the institutional conflict should be resolved in accordance with the  
2918 institutional conflict of interests policies.

2919 Likewise, when a significant, real, potential or perceived institutional  
2920 conflict of interests is disclosed and brought to its attention, the REB should  
2921 be guided by and defer to, the prescribed institutional mechanisms for  
2922 consulting with the relevant body to manage the conflict. The REB should  
2923 record the fact that the issue has been forwarded to the appropriate body  
2924 through relevant institutional mechanisms. To that end, effective  
2925 communications processes should be established between REBs and  
2926 institutions they serve.

2927 Community-based research involving small communities or community-based  
2928 organizations with scarce human resources may present particular issues related  
2929 to multiple roles of some individuals. In some cases, securing informed advice  
2930 on cultural or other aspects of research rests with the researcher or the



2931 sponsoring institution and requires engagement with a community advisor, who  
2932 may assume various roles in the research process. The same individual may be  
2933 involved in providing preliminary information as well as reviewing the ethics  
2934 of a research proposal at the community level and even co-managing the  
2935 approved research. As outlined in Article 7.1, an approach proportionate to the  
2936 level of risks, such as disclosure of the possible conflicts between multiple  
2937 roles, may be sufficient to manage the conflict. (See also Chapter 9).

2938 **B. REB Members and Conflicts of Interests**

2939 **Article 7.3** When reviewing research proposals, REB members shall disclose real or  
2940 potential conflicts of interests to the REB, and, where necessary, the REB may  
2941 decide that some of its members must withdraw from REB deliberations and  
2942 decisions.

2943 **Application** To maintain the independence and integrity of ethics review, members of the  
2944 REB must avoid, disclose and/or manage real, or potential conflicts of interests.  
2945 For example, REB members are in a conflict of interests when their own  
2946 research projects are under review by their REB, when they are the co-  
2947 investigator, or when they are in a supervisory or mentoring relationship with a  
2948 graduate student applicant. REB members may also be in a conflict of interests  
2949 situation when they have interpersonal relationships or personal or financial  
2950 interests in a company, labour union or not-for-profit organization that may be  
2951 the sponsor of the research study, or may be substantially affected by the  
2952 research.

2953 When REB members are, or have been, in direct conflict with researchers on  
2954 academic or scientific issues, or when they have engaged in research  
2955 collaborations and/or commercial transactions with the researcher whose  
2956 proposal is under review, REB members should disclose and fully explain to  
2957 the REB the conflict of interests to prevent bias or undue influence in the  
2958 outcome of the review process. In such cases, the researcher should be able to  
2959 raise with the REB any concerns with respect to conflict of interests. To  
2960 manage such conflicts, the REB as a whole, first in consultation with the REB  
2961 member and then in that person's absence, should discuss and determine  
2962 whether the REB member should withdraw from the committee when such  
2963 projects are under consideration.

2964 Conflict of interests policies should determine a reasonable time period during  
2965 which an REB member is not allowed to review a proposal from a close  
2966 colleague to ensure adequate and continued access to competent expertise. In  
2967 some cases, the scientific expertise of the REB member may still be sought  
2968 when no other individuals with the scientific expertise relevant to the proposal  
2969 under review are available to the REB. In such instances, the REB will record  
2970 this explicitly in the minutes. The member should not be present when the REB  
2971 makes its decision. In exceptional circumstances guaranteeing unbiased,  
2972 competent and independent decision making by the REB may require reducing  
2973 the quorum. The REB minutes should record whether with the withdrawal of  
2974 the REB member, the REB was unable to maintain its quorum for decision

2975 making. (See Article 6.9).

2976 While the presence of administrative staff dedicated to research ethics  
2977 functions (e.g. the research ethics office administrator or director) may be  
2978 relevant and appropriate to support REB procedures, an institutional senior  
2979 administrator (e.g. a vice-president research or business development) should  
2980 not serve on an REB, attend meetings, or influence the REB decision making  
2981 process. (See Articles 6.2, 6.4 and 6.10). The mere presence of a non-voting  
2982 institutional senior administrator at REB meetings may undermine the  
2983 independence of the REB by unduly influencing REB deliberations and  
2984 decisions.

2985 REBs and non-voting senior administrators should consider other venues to  
2986 discuss policy issues, general issues arising from the REB’s activities,  
2987 revisions of policies or training or educational needs, to the benefit of the  
2988 overall operations and mandate of the REB. In the discharge of their  
2989 interdependent roles and duties to research participants, effective  
2990 communications processes should be established between REBs and the  
2991 relevant officers of institutions they serve.

2992 In cases where senior administrators interfere with the REB decision-making  
2993 process, REBs should invoke the institutional conflict of interests policies.

2994 Institutional conflicts of interests may give rise to professional conflicts or  
2995 divided loyalties for individuals working in affected institutions. Reasonable  
2996 compensation by institutions for work done by REB members is appropriate.  
2997 However, in some instances, individual members of the REB may have a  
2998 conflict of interests in accepting undue or excessive honoraria for their  
2999 participation in the REB. Institutions should define appropriate levels of  
3000 compensation.

### 3001 **C. Researchers and Conflicts of Interests**

3002 **Article 7.4** Researchers shall disclose to the REB real, potential or perceived individual  
3003 conflicts of interests, as well as any institutional conflicts of interests of which  
3004 they are aware that may have an impact on their research. Upon discussion with  
3005 the researcher, the REB shall determine the appropriate steps to manage the  
3006 conflict of interests.

3007 **Application** Individual conflicts of interests may arise from interpersonal relationships (e.g.,  
3008 family or community relationships), financial partnerships, other economic  
3009 interests (e.g. spin-off companies in which researchers have stakes, or private  
3010 contract research outside of the academic realm), academic interests or any  
3011 other incentives that may compromise integrity, or respect for the core  
3012 principles of this Policy. Conflicts may arise from an individual’s involvement  
3013 in dual and multiple roles within or outside an institution. While generally it is  
3014 impossible to eliminate all conflicts of interests, researchers are expected to  
3015 recognize, disclose, limit and manage their individual conflicts in a manner that  
3016 is satisfactory to the REB.

3017 Managing conflict of interests is a process, of which the first step is  
3018 identification followed by disclosure. Upon disclosure to the REB, the steps  
3019 taken by the REB to manage the conflict should be context-based and  
3020 proportionate to the risks. For example, in some cases, the REB might  
3021 conclude that the identified conflict of interests does not warrant specific  
3022 actions. Generally, the REB should require, consistent with Article 3.2(e), that  
3023 the researcher disclose any real, potential or perceived conflict of interest to the  
3024 research participant. When disclosure to the REB is not enough to manage the  
3025 conflict of interests, the REB, guided by established institutional policies, may  
3026 require that the researcher withdraw from the research or that others who are  
3027 not in conflict of interests make research-related decisions. Where appropriate,  
3028 disclosure to the sponsor, the institution and any relevant professional body  
3029 may also be necessary. In exceptional cases, the REB has the discretion to  
3030 refuse approval of a study where the REB decides that the conflict of interests  
3031 has not been avoided or cannot appropriately be managed.

3032 If there is a need to involve the researcher in some aspect of the research for  
3033 which this individual is in conflict of interests, such involvement should be  
3034 justified and disclosed to the research participant by the researcher, and  
3035 reviewed and endorsed explicitly by the REB in its minutes. In line with the  
3036 proportionate approach, and through the continued ethics review process, REBs  
3037 may impose additional control mechanisms in such cases.

3038 Dual roles of researchers and associated obligations (e.g. acting as both a  
3039 researcher and a therapist, health care provider, caregiver, teacher, advisor,  
3040 consultant, supervisor, student or employer) may create conflicts, undue  
3041 influences, power imbalances or coercion that could affect relationships with  
3042 others and affect decision-making procedures (e.g. free and informed consent  
3043 of participants). Article 3.2(e) reminds researchers of relevant ethical duties  
3044 that govern real, potential or perceived conflicts of interests as they relate to the  
3045 consent of participants. To preserve and not abuse the trust on which many  
3046 professional relationships rest, researchers should be fully cognizant of  
3047 conflicts of interests that may arise from their dual or multiple roles, being  
3048 entirely aware of their rights and responsibilities, and they shall manage the  
3049 conflict. When acting in dual roles, the researcher shall disclose this fact to the  
3050 participant.

3051 In some instances, the perceived or real conflict of interest may arise after the  
3052 research has been conducted. For example, when after the completion of a  
3053 clinical trial conducted in a clinical practice, the physician is invited to  
3054 participate in a seminar organized by the sponsor of the trial in an interesting  
3055 location or when a company offers to ghost-write a scientific article only to be  
3056 signed by the physician-researcher.

3057 Care should also be exercised in developing relationships between researchers  
3058 and authorities, so as not to compromise the consent and privacy of participants  
3059 and the confidentiality obligations of researchers, and to maintain public  
3060 confidence and trust. Article 3.1 provides additional information on coercive  
3061 situations and how they may impact on consent.

3062 As part of the research plan for REB review, researchers must provide  
3063 details on the research project, payments to the researchers by sponsors,  
3064 commercial interests, consultative relationships and other relevant  
3065 information (e.g. donation to an institution by a research sponsor) and  
3066 documentation, and identify strategies to prevent, disclose and manage  
3067 conflicts properly. Disclosure of the kinds and amounts of payments to  
3068 researchers, and other budgetary details, especially if the researcher also  
3069 holds a therapeutic, clinical or other fiduciary relationship with research  
3070 participants, will assist the REB, or other delegated body within the  
3071 institution, to assess potential conflicts of interests and will help the  
3072 researcher in resolving them. (See Articles 11.9 and 11.10).

3073 The perception of a conflict of interests may, in many cases, be as damaging  
3074 as a real conflict. The REB should assess the likelihood that the researcher's  
3075 judgment may be inappropriately influenced or perceived to be influenced  
3076 by private or personal interests, and it should determine the level of harm  
3077 that is likely to result from such influence or from the perception of undue  
3078 influence.

3079 In addressing conflicts of interests, disagreements between the REB and the  
3080 researcher may arise about the scope and reach of disclosure, including  
3081 disclosure of new information to participants, or other aspects of managing  
3082 the conflict. Resolution of disagreements should be guided by a paramount  
3083 principle of respect for persons and concern for welfare of participants. If  
3084 the researcher and the REB cannot resolve their disagreement they should  
3085 use the institutional conflict of interest mechanisms.

3086 **Reference**

---

- Memorandum of Understanding (MOU) on the Roles and Responsibilities in the Management of Federal Grants and Awards, [www.nserc-crsng.gc.ca/NSERC-CRSNG/Policies-Politiques/MOURoles-ProtocolRoles/index\\_eng.asp](http://www.nserc-crsng.gc.ca/NSERC-CRSNG/Policies-Politiques/MOURoles-ProtocolRoles/index_eng.asp)

# Chapter 8

3087

3088

## MULTI-JURISDICTIONAL RESEARCH

3089 This chapter sets out options, procedures and considerations for the ethics review of multi-  
3090 jurisdictional research either entirely within Canada, or in Canada and other countries. It is  
3091 intended to facilitate the ethics review and conduct of such research while ensuring that  
3092 participants are afforded the same respect and protection in accordance with the core  
3093 principles of this Policy.

3094 Contemporary research often involves collaborative partnerships among researchers from  
3095 multiple institutions or countries. It may call upon the participation of a number of local  
3096 populations and involve multiple institutions and/or multiple research ethics boards  
3097 (REBs).

3098 Collaborative research may require institutions to adopt policies and procedures that permit  
3099 arrangements for REB review off-site at other institutions. To be effective, these review  
3100 arrangements should ensure that research involving humans is designed, reviewed and  
3101 conducted in a way that is informed by the core principles of this Policy – respect for  
3102 persons, concern for welfare, and justice. These core principles should be balanced with a  
3103 proportionate approach to the research ethics review process for research being undertaken  
3104 in Canada or abroad.

### 3105 **A. Review Mechanisms for Research Involving Multiple** 3106 **Institutions and/or Multiple REBs**

3107 This section primarily addresses the ethics review mechanisms for research involving  
3108 multiple institutions and/or multiple REBs. It is not intended to apply to ethics review  
3109 mechanisms for research involving multiple REBs within the jurisdiction or auspices of a  
3110 single institution – addressed in Article 6.3.

3111 Research involving humans that may require the involvement of multiple institutions and/or  
3112 multiple REBs includes, but is not limited to, the following situations:

- 3113 (a) a research project conducted by a team of researchers affiliated with different  
3114 institutions;
- 3115 (b) several research projects independently conducted by researchers affiliated with  
3116 different institutions, with data combined at some point to form one overall research  
3117 project;
- 3118 (c) a research project conducted by a researcher affiliated with one institution, but that  
3119 involves collecting data or recruiting research participants at different institutions;

- 3120 (d) a research project conducted by a researcher who has multiple institutional  
3121 affiliations (e.g. two universities, a university and a college, or a university and a  
3122 hospital). (See Article 6.1);
- 3123 (e) a research project conducted by a researcher at one institution that requires the  
3124 limited collaboration of individuals affiliated with different institutions or  
3125 organizations (e.g. statisticians, lab or X-ray technicians, social workers and school  
3126 teachers); or
- 3127 (f) a research project that researcher(s) working under the auspices of a Canadian  
3128 research institution conduct in another province, territory or country.

## 3129 **Adoption of Alternative Review Models is an Institutional Responsibility**

3130 **Article 8.1** An institution that has established an REB may approve alternative review  
3131 models for research involving multiple REBs and/or institutions, in accordance  
3132 with this Policy, but remains responsible for the ethical acceptability of  
3133 research undertaken within its jurisdiction or under its auspices irrespective of  
3134 where the research is conducted.

3135 **Application** As described earlier in Chapter 6, institutions are accountable for research  
3136 conducted under their auspices, irrespective of the location where it takes  
3137 place. Where research involving humans requires the involvement of  
3138 multiple institutions and/or multiple REBs, an institution may establish one  
3139 or more, or a mix of models for research ethics review described below.  
3140 Institutions may also establish other models or arrangements deemed  
3141 appropriate for the research under review within their jurisdiction or under  
3142 their auspices. The ultimate responsibility for approving alternative ethics  
3143 review models for potential use by its REBs and researchers remains with  
3144 the individual institutions.

3145 An institution may authorize its REB to accept reviews of another  
3146 institution's REB if both institutions have an official agreement that includes  
3147 at least the following components:

- 3148 ▪ all institutions involved agree to adhere to the requirements of this  
3149 Policy, formalize the cross-institutional agreement, and document the  
3150 existence of such agreement in their institutional policies;
- 3151 ▪ the highest institutional level, the body that originally defined the  
3152 jurisdiction of the REB and its relationship to other relevant bodies or  
3153 authorities within the institution, makes the decision to allow an REB to  
3154 recognize decisions made by another institution's REB (in accordance  
3155 with Article 6.2); and
- 3156 ▪ approvals based on cross-institutional agreements should be brought to  
3157 the attention of the full REB in each institution, in the same way as  
3158 decisions made by delegated review.

3159 Researchers and REBs should use the review models defined by their  
3160 institution (see Article 8.2) and facilitate coordination of ethics review.  
3161 Whatever model is chosen, roles and responsibilities of all involved in the  
3162 process should be defined and agreed to at the outset. Continuing ethics  
3163 review for such research should follow the same process outlined in Article  
3164 6.14.

3165 ***Review Models***

3166 The following models for the ethics review of research involving multiple REBs and/or  
3167 multiple institutions are intended to provide flexibility and efficiency and avoid  
3168 unnecessary duplication of review without compromising the protection of research  
3169 participants. All other provisions of this Policy remain applicable.

3170 *1. Independent Review by Several Single REBs*

3171 This follows the same review process for research that does not require the involvement of  
3172 multiple REBs and/or institutions. The REBs involved at each participating institution  
3173 conduct their independent research ethics review and provide their separate decisions,  
3174 either concurrently or sequentially. The level of ethics review of research that may involve  
3175 multiple REBs and/or institutions should be proportionate to the risk involved in the  
3176 research. (See Article 6.12).

3177 Ethics review of the proposed research at each collaborating institution helps to ensure that  
3178 local issues and values are taken into consideration. This approach may be particularly  
3179 important, though often more challenging, when there are relevant social or cultural  
3180 differences between the participating institutions. When several REBs consider the same  
3181 proposal from their own institutional perspectives, they may reach different conclusions on  
3182 one or more aspects of the proposed research, reflecting local considerations and values. REBs  
3183 may therefore wish to coordinate their review of projects requiring multiple REB involvement,  
3184 including conducting their reviews in a timely manner and communicating any concerns that  
3185 they may have with other REBs reviewing the same project. When multiple REBs are  
3186 involved, the principal investigator should work with his/her REB to formulate a strategy to  
3187 address procedural inconsistencies or substantive disagreements that may arise among the  
3188 participating REBs.

3189 Where possible, researchers should provide their REB with the name and contact information  
3190 of the other REBs that will also review the project, to facilitate direct communication between  
3191 the REBs, and help resolve disagreements that may arise.

3192 *2. Research Ethics Review Delegated to a Specialized or Multi-institutional REB*

3193 Institutions may allow research on specialized content or research methods to be reviewed  
3194 by an external, specialized or multi-institutional REB, where such a body exists. In the  
3195 official agreement between the selected REB and the institutions submitting research for  
3196 review, the specialized or multi-institutional REB shall agree to adhere to this Policy.  
3197 Specialized or multi-institutional REBs may be established regionally,  
3198 provincially/territorially or nationally, as necessary.

3199 Another situation would include two or more institutions creating a single joint REB to  
3200 which the research ethics review is delegated. Such a delegation may be based on  
3201 geographical proximity or other considerations such as capacity, volume of reviews or  
3202 shared expertise.

3203 Some provinces have introduced legislation or policies that designate one or more REBs for  
3204 the review of certain types of research within the province (see References below).

3205 Roles and responsibilities should be clearly defined in the official agreement between the  
3206 institution(s) delegating the review and the institution of the REB that will review the  
3207 research, or in the relevant legislation or policies. The specialized or multi-institutional  
3208 REB may act as the responsible REB for any given review, if formally mandated as such by  
3209 the institutions in question. Where relevant, agreements should specify how the specialized  
3210 or multi-institutional REB will assure familiarity with particular populations that may be  
3211 involved in the research. Review by a specialized or multi-institutional REB need not be  
3212 preceded or followed by local REB review unless warranted to help ensure that local issues  
3213 and values are taken into account.

### 3214 3. *Reciprocal REB Review*

3215 Multiple institutions may enter into official agreements under which they will accept, with an  
3216 agreed level of oversight, the ethics reviews of each other's REBs. This might involve specific  
3217 agreements between institutions for sharing the workload. Alternatively, institutions may  
3218 decide that reciprocity agreements should be established for each relevant research proposal  
3219 on a case-by-case basis.

3220 In either case, researchers should ensure that the reviewing REB is provided with any  
3221 relevant information about the local populations and circumstances that would ordinarily be  
3222 available to the local REB and that may have a bearing on its review. The reviewing REB  
3223 might call upon local REBs to provide information in addition to that provided by the  
3224 researchers.

### 3225 **Selection of a Review Model Relevant to the Research Project**

3226 **Article 8.2** In accordance with their institutional policies and procedures, researchers  
3227 and REBs should, together, determine which review model is the most  
3228 appropriate for the proposed research involving multiple institutions and/or  
3229 REBs.

3230 **Application** When planning for research involving multiple institutions and/or multiple  
3231 REBs, researchers and REBs should identify which review models have  
3232 been approved by their institution and determine which one would be most  
3233 relevant for the proposed research. Researchers should consider the  
3234 alternative review models at the planning and design stage of their research,  
3235 and should consult with their REB to facilitate the selection and  
3236 coordination of the appropriate review model.

3237 Sensitivity to context is a key issue in the application of the core principles  
3238 of this Policy to the ethics review of research involving multiple institutions



3239 and/or REBs. In choosing the appropriate review model, the researcher and  
3240 the REB should pay attention to the research context and the characteristics  
3241 of the populations targeted by the research.

3242 Where the choice of review models is available, researchers and REBs  
3243 should consider the following:

3244       ▪ the discipline and content area of the research and the availability of  
3245       appropriate experience and expertise within, or available to, the  
3246       reviewing REB;

3247       ▪ the scope of the project to be reviewed and appropriateness of the  
3248       proposed review model;

3249       ▪ the vulnerability of the study population overall and/or the particular  
3250       characteristics of the local population at individual sites, differences in  
3251       values and cultural norms, and the level of risk associated with the  
3252       research under review;

3253       ▪ any relevant differences in laws and/or guidelines pertaining to the  
3254       research in question if the institutions are in different  
3255       provinces/territories/countries;

3256       ▪ relationships between institutions and REBs, and conflict resolution  
3257       mechanisms related to REB decisions;

3258       ▪ the potential for conflict of interests and undue influence, including from  
3259       funding sources;

3260       ▪ any differences in the standard of care or access to services that might be  
3261       relevant to the conduct of the research, normally followed at the  
3262       participating institutions; and

3263       ▪ any operational issues that might affect the research.

## 3264 **B. Review of Research Conducted Outside an REB's Jurisdiction**

3265 Researchers affiliated with Canadian institutions are undertaking research in numerous sites  
3266 within Canada and in countries around the world. Such research may be carried out with or  
3267 without any collaboration with host institutions and local researchers. Most middle-income  
3268 countries and many low-income countries have laws, policies or guidelines governing the  
3269 conduct of research involving humans, but some parts of the world do not have developed  
3270 or widespread research ethics infrastructure.

3271 National and international standards for research involving human participants are evolving  
3272 continually, but methods for comparing the precise levels of protection afforded  
3273 participants in different countries or jurisdictions, and different institutions within those  
3274 countries and jurisdictions, have not yet been developed. In exercising its responsibilities  
3275 for the initial and continuing ethics review of research conducted under its auspices outside  
3276 its jurisdiction, the Canadian REB shall satisfy itself that the requirements of this Policy are

3277 met, both within the Canadian institution and within the host country or site, taking  
3278 appropriate steps to ensure they are responsive to ethically relevant aspects of the research  
3279 context.

3280 **Article 8.3** (a) Where research conducted under the auspices of a Canadian research  
3281 institution and performed in whole or in part outside Canada is covered by  
3282 an ethics review model involving multiple institutions and/or REBs  
3283 consistent with this Policy, the terms of that model apply.

3284 (b) Subject to Article 8.3 (a), research conducted under the auspices of a  
3285 Canadian research institution and conducted outside its jurisdiction,  
3286 whether elsewhere in Canada or outside Canada, shall undergo prospective  
3287 ethics review both by (i) the REB at the Canadian institution under the  
3288 auspices of which the research is being conducted and (ii) the REB or other  
3289 responsible review body or bodies, if any, at the host research site.

3290 **Application** An institution is responsible for the ethical conduct of research undertaken by  
3291 its faculty, staff or students regardless of where the research is conducted. (See  
3292 Article 6.1). Thus, for a Canadian research institution, review of the research  
3293 by the institution’s REB is required in addition to review by an REB having  
3294 jurisdiction at the research site in the host country or elsewhere in Canada, if  
3295 any. Approval of a research proposal by an REB at the host research site does  
3296 not constitute sufficient authorization to conduct the research without the  
3297 approval of the relevant Canadian REB(s). Conversely, approval by the  
3298 Canadian REB(s) is not sufficient warrant to begin the research without the  
3299 approval of the REB or other appropriately constituted review body at the host  
3300 site.

3301 In some cases, researchers undertake research in Canada or abroad without  
3302 seeking formal collaboration with other academic institutions. In such cases, in  
3303 addition to the REB review at their own institution, researchers may need to  
3304 obtain access to the site and prospective participants from a responsible agency,  
3305 where such exists. They should inform the REB whether or how they will seek  
3306 permission to proceed with the research at that site and with the target research  
3307 participants. Some organizations or groups have established mechanisms or  
3308 guidelines (e.g. school boards, Aboriginal communities [see Chapter 9],  
3309 correctional services, service agencies and community groups) to review  
3310 requests for research prior to allowing access to their members or individuals,  
3311 or access to data about them, under their authority. When designing their  
3312 research, researchers should consider such provisions. This article does not  
3313 apply to research using critical inquiry about organizations or institutions. (See  
3314 Article 3.6).

3315 Researchers should inform the REB about the absence of established review  
3316 mechanisms at the research site, and about their efforts to identify any other  
3317 suitable review mechanisms in the host country<sup>1</sup>. When no appropriate  
3318 mechanisms for research ethics review exist at the research site, researchers  
3319 and REBs should apply the core principles outlined in this Policy. (See  
3320 Chapter 1).

3321 REBs should not prevent research from proceeding solely because the  
3322 research cannot be reviewed and approved through a formal REB review  
3323 process in the foreign country or other jurisdiction. Under these  
3324 circumstances, researchers should be aware of relevant cultural practices,  
3325 such as those normally followed to seek entry into the relevant communities,  
3326 and be respectful of them. Researchers should inform the REB of their  
3327 strategies to familiarize themselves with the relevant norms and cultural  
3328 practices and to minimize risks to individuals and communities participating  
3329 in, or potentially affected by, the research, including the risk of any social  
3330 disruption that the research might cause or exacerbate. Additional guidance  
3331 may be found in Chapter 4, Section D, and Chapter 9 of this Policy.

3332 Researchers and REBs should afford the prospective participants no less  
3333 protection and respect than what this Policy requires. Respect for persons,  
3334 concern for welfare, and justice considered in the context of the particular  
3335 research project and setting should guide researchers in the design of their  
3336 research, and REBs in their review.

3337 **Article 8.4** (a) The information to be provided to the home REB will be determined by  
3338 the provisions of the review model.

3339 (b) When conducting research outside the jurisdiction of their home  
3340 institution, whether at a site abroad or in Canada, researchers should  
3341 provide their home REBs with:

- 3342       ▪ the relevant information on the rules governing human research and  
3343       the ethics review requirements at the host site, where such exist;
- 3344       ▪ the names and contact information for the relevant REBs or  
3345       comparable ethics bodies, if known, that will review the proposal at  
3346       the host site; and
- 3347       ▪ relevant information about the target populations and circumstances  
3348       that might have a bearing on the ethical review by the researchers'  
3349       home REB.

3350 **Application** Researchers and REBs should be aware of the research ethics requirements and  
3351 the types of protection afforded to research participants at proposed research  
3352 locations. Researchers and REBs should consult relevant resources for details  
3353 about governing laws or policies, and for information regarding appropriate  
3354 REBs at the proposed research site in Canada or in the host country. (See  
3355 References below). Applicable policies at the proposed site may differ  
3356 considerably from this Policy, and therefore it is the responsibility of the  
3357 researchers and REB(s) to ensure that, at a minimum, the provisions of this  
3358 Policy for the particular research project are followed at such sites, within the  
3359 host country or in Canada.

3360 Subject to Article 8.4(a), disagreements may arise when one of the REBs or  
3361 equivalent review body (Canadian or foreign) grants approval while the other  
3362 does not. Such disagreements require open communication among the

3363 researchers and the REBs or equivalent review bodies involved. (See also  
 3364 Section A above). In keeping with the context-sensitive approach to research  
 3365 ethics review embodied in this Policy, the Canadian REB should ensure that it  
 3366 has a clear understanding of the differing rationales that might underlie  
 3367 divergent REB positions or decisions on a given proposal. Where the REB is  
 3368 uncertain about the appropriate course of action in a given research proposal, it  
 3369 should make contact with its counterpart REB in the host site or country. In the  
 3370 absence of formal reciprocity agreements between countries or institutions with  
 3371 respect to initial and continuing ethics review, the REBs should engage in  
 3372 dialogue and may even establish a specific mechanism, such as a joint  
 3373 subcommittee of the two REBs (e.g. for situations in which institutions  
 3374 collaborate regularly), to facilitate appropriate deliberation in order to reach a  
 3375 thoughtful and well-informed judgment on a given research proposal. (See also  
 3376 Article 8.1).

3377 **Endnote**

---

<sup>1</sup> See for example the United States Office for Human Research Protections (OHRP) registry of REBs (see Reference below), mainly in the area of health and biomedical research. It can serve as one resource for identifying research ethics review bodies around the world.

**References**

---

- Council for International Organizations of Medical Sciences. *International Ethical Guidelines for Biomedical Research Involving Human Subjects*. CIOMS, Geneva, 2002, [www.cioms.ch/frame\\_guidelines\\_nov\\_2002.htm](http://www.cioms.ch/frame_guidelines_nov_2002.htm)
- « Mécanisme encadrant l'examen éthique et le suivi continu des projets multicentriques », Québec, Ministère de la Santé et des Services sociaux, Direction générale adjointe de l'évaluation, de la recherche et de l'innovation, Unité de l'éthique, en vigueur depuis le 1<sup>er</sup> avril 2008, [www.ethique.msss.gouv.qc.ca/site/fr\\_mecanismemulticentrique.phtml](http://www.ethique.msss.gouv.qc.ca/site/fr_mecanismemulticentrique.phtml)
- Office for Human Research Protections (OHRP), *International Compilation of Human Subject Research Protections*, (2010 Edition), [www.hhs.gov/ohrp/international/HSPCompilation.pdf](http://www.hhs.gov/ohrp/international/HSPCompilation.pdf)
- ———, IRB FWA Registry, <http://ohrp.cit.nih.gov/search/>
- *St. John's, Newfoundland and Labrador, Canada, Health Research Ethics Authority Act*, S.N.L. 2006, c. H-1.2, <http://assembly.nl.ca/Legislation/sr/statutes/h01-2.htm>
- World Medical Association. *Declaration of Helsinki - Ethical Principles for Medical Research Involving Human Subjects*, (2008), [www.wma.net/en/20activities/10ethics/10helsinki/index.html](http://www.wma.net/en/20activities/10ethics/10helsinki/index.html)

# Chapter 9

3378

## 3379 RESEARCH INVOLVING ABORIGINAL PEOPLES IN CANADA

3380 *Note: A draft of Chapter 9 was released in November 2009. The version below was revised.*  
3381 *To view the November 2009 version as well as a version showing where changes were*  
3382 *made, please click on the following link: [www.pre.ethics.gc.ca/eng/policy-](http://www.pre.ethics.gc.ca/eng/policy-politique/initiatives/reports-rapports/arei-iera/)*  
3383 *[politique/initiatives/reports-rapports/arei-iera/](http://www.pre.ethics.gc.ca/eng/policy-politique/initiatives/reports-rapports/arei-iera/).*

### 3384 Introduction

3385 The Aboriginal and treaty rights of Aboriginal peoples of Canada, including the Indian,  
3386 Inuit and Métis peoples of Canada, were recognized and affirmed in the *Constitution Act*,  
3387 1982.<sup>1</sup> This affirmation implies an ethical duty for those involved in research to  
3388 acknowledge and support the desire of Aboriginal Peoples to maintain their collective  
3389 identities and the continuity of their cultures.

3390 This chapter acknowledges the unique status of the Aboriginal peoples of Canada. It  
3391 interprets how the value of respect for human dignity and the core principles of respect for  
3392 persons, concern for welfare, and justice, as articulated in Chapter 1 apply to research  
3393 involving Aboriginal peoples. It accords respect to Indigenous knowledge systems by  
3394 ensuring that distinct world views are represented wherever possible in planning and  
3395 decision making, from the earliest stages of conception and design of projects through to  
3396 analysis and dissemination of results. It affirms Aboriginal rights, interests and  
3397 responsibilities as reflected in community customs and codes of research practice in order  
3398 to better ensure balance in the relationship between researchers and participants and mutual  
3399 benefit in researcher-community relations. The purpose of this chapter specifically, and the  
3400 Policy in general, is to provide guidance to researchers on ethical conduct in research  
3401 involving Aboriginal peoples. Neither this Policy nor this chapter are meant to reflect or  
3402 introduce any change to current Government of Canada policy with respect to the issues  
3403 discussed herein.

3404 Indian peoples commonly identify themselves as “First Nations.” The desire to conserve  
3405 and develop knowledge specific to First Nations, Inuit and Métis communities, and to  
3406 benefit from contemporary applications of traditional knowledge, is a motivating force in  
3407 community initiatives to assume a decisive role in research. The guidance provided in this  
3408 chapter is based on the premise that engagement with community is an integral part of  
3409 ethical research involving Aboriginal peoples. While continuing to respect individual  
3410 autonomy, this Policy acknowledges the role of community in shaping the conduct of  
3411 research, in particular, research that affects First Nations, Inuit and Métis peoples. In light  
3412 of the diversity within and between First Nations, Inuit and Métis communities, and the  
3413 ongoing development of community codes of research practice by these communities at the

3414 local, regional and national level, ethical review of a proposed project must be attentive to  
3415 its specific context.

3416 This chapter has drawn on prior work, both within Canada and internationally, that  
3417 recognizes the rights, interests and responsibilities of Aboriginal peoples participating in  
3418 and affected by research endeavours. Some of that work has been done by the three  
3419 agencies responsible for this Policy. In particular, the Canadian Institutes of Health  
3420 Research (CIHR) and its Institute of Aboriginal Peoples' Health have engaged in extensive  
3421 dialogue with community partners to develop CIHR *Guidelines for Health Research  
3422 Involving Aboriginal People* (2007). The Social Sciences and Humanities Research Council  
3423 (SSHRC) and the Natural Sciences and Engineering Research Council (NSERC), likewise,  
3424 have developed guidelines applicable to programs targeted at research involving Aboriginal  
3425 people and issues. Aboriginal entities at local, regional and national levels have published  
3426 and implemented codes governing research practice – including ethical protections – that  
3427 emphasize collective rights, interests and responsibilities.

3428 This Policy provides guidance for research involving humans, as defined in Chapter 2.  
3429 Guidelines applicable to particular programs, research domains and community settings  
3430 may elaborate on processes set out herein, or may address ethical concerns of broader  
3431 scope. Researchers and research ethics boards (REBs) are advised to consult reference  
3432 documents that apply to their research undertaking. Examples of relevant resources are  
3433 listed at the end of this chapter.

#### 3434 **A. Key Concepts and Definitions**

3435 For the purposes of this Policy<sup>2</sup>, this chapter uses the following key concepts:

- 3436     ▪ Aboriginal peoples – a term<sup>3</sup> referring collectively to Indian, Inuit and Métis  
3437     peoples of Canada, whose existing Aboriginal and treaty rights are recognized and  
3438     affirmed. Indian peoples commonly identify themselves by traditional names such  
3439     as Mi'kmaq, Dene or Haida, and as First Nations. For the purposes of this Policy,  
3440     the term “Aboriginal” includes persons of First Nations, Inuit or Métis origin –  
3441     regardless of where they reside and whether or not they have status on an official  
3442     register. The term “Aboriginal” glosses over the distinctions among First Nations,  
3443     Inuit and Métis peoples, who have their own histories, cultures and languages, so an  
3444     attempt has been made to limit use of the term in this Policy to instances where a  
3445     global term is appropriate.
- 3446     ▪ Aboriginal rights, interests and responsibilities – for the purposes of this Policy,  
3447     ethical obligations are more broadly construed than the legal definition of  
3448     Aboriginal and treaty rights. The term “responsibilities” is consistent with  
3449     Aboriginal worldviews that include multi-generational obligations to ancestors and  
3450     future generations.
- 3451     ▪ Community – describes a collectivity with shared identity or interests that has the  
3452     capacity to act or express itself as a group. In this Policy, a community may be  
3453     territorial, organizational or a community of interest. Territorial communities have  
3454     governing bodies exercising local or regional jurisdiction, for example, members of  
3455     a First Nation resident on reserve lands. Organizational communities have explicit

3456 mandates and formal leadership. In both territorial and organizational communities,  
3457 membership is defined and the community has designated leaders. Communities of  
3458 interest may be formed by individuals or organizations who come together for a  
3459 common purpose or undertaking, such as a commitment to conserving a heritage  
3460 language. These are informal communities whose boundaries and leadership may be  
3461 fluid and less well-defined. They may exist temporarily or over the long term.

3462 An individual may belong to multiple communities, both Aboriginal and non-  
3463 Aboriginal for example, as a member of a local Métis community, a graduate  
3464 students' society, and a coalition in support of Aboriginal rights. For the purposes of  
3465 research, how an individual defines which of his or her community relationships are  
3466 most relevant will likely depend on the nature of the particular research project  
3467 being proposed.

3468     ▪ Community engagement – a process that establishes interaction between a  
3469 researcher or research team and the Aboriginal community relevant to the research  
3470 project. It signifies a collaborative relationship between researchers and  
3471 communities, although the degree of collaboration may vary depending on the  
3472 community context and the nature of the research. The engagement may take many  
3473 forms including – consent from formal leadership to conduct research in the  
3474 community, joint planning with a responsible agency, commitment to a partnership  
3475 formalized in a research agreement, or dialogue with an advisory group expert in the  
3476 customs governing the knowledge being sought. The level of engagement may  
3477 range from information sharing to active participation and collaboration to  
3478 empowerment and shared leadership of the research project. Communities may also  
3479 choose not to engage actively in a research project, but simply to acknowledge it  
3480 and register no objection to it.

3481     ▪ Indigenous knowledge – the knowledge held by Indigenous peoples who, in  
3482 Canada, may be referred to as Aboriginal. Indigenous knowledge is usually  
3483 described as holistic, involving body, mind, feelings and spirit. Knowledge is  
3484 specific to place, transmitted orally and rooted in the experience of multiple  
3485 generations. Indigenous knowledge is expressed in symbols, arts, ceremonial and  
3486 everyday practices, narratives and, especially, in relationships. Indigenous peoples  
3487 value their relationship with the land as a living entity that reveals the way to living  
3488 a good life. Spirituality expressed in traditional or Christian practices, relationships  
3489 with ancestors and responsibilities to future generations are integral to the world  
3490 view of many Aboriginal peoples.

3491 Indigenous knowledge has gained recognition as a resource of potential benefit to  
3492 modern society – for example, through traditional techniques of sustaining  
3493 environmental systems in balance with human usage or knowledge of plant life for  
3494 agricultural, medicinal and cosmetic purposes. It includes traditional knowledge  
3495 received from past generations and innovations transmitted to subsequent  
3496 generations.

3497 **B. Interpreting the Ethics Framework in Aboriginal Contexts**

3498 Chapter 1 identifies three principles as expressions of the core ethical value of respect for  
3499 human dignity – respect for persons, concern for welfare, and justice. The three core  
3500 principles are interpreted in this chapter as follows:

3501 **Respect for persons** is expressed principally through securing the voluntary, informed  
3502 consent of research participants. First Nations, Inuit and Métis concerns for their continuity  
3503 as peoples with distinctive cultures and identities have increasingly led to the development  
3504 of codes of research practice that address concerns arising from their world views.  
3505 Aboriginal codes of research practice thus go beyond the scope of ethical protections for  
3506 individual participants, and extend to the interconnection between humans and the natural  
3507 world, as well as obligations to maintain and pass on to future generations knowledge  
3508 received from ancestors and innovations devised in the present generation.

3509 Historically, the well-being of individual participants has been the focus of research ethics  
3510 guidelines. In this Policy, the principle of **concern for welfare** is broader, requiring  
3511 consideration of participants and potential participants in their physical, social, economic  
3512 and cultural environments. This Policy acknowledges the important role of Aboriginal  
3513 communities in promoting collective rights, interests and responsibilities that also serve the  
3514 welfare of individuals.

3515 Aboriginal peoples are particularly concerned that research should enhance their capacity to  
3516 maintain their cultures, languages and identities as distinct peoples and to facilitate their  
3517 full participation in and contribution to Canadian society. The interpretation of concern for  
3518 welfare in First Nations, Inuit and Métis contexts may therefore place strong emphasis on  
3519 collective welfare as a complement to individual well-being.

3520 **Justice** may be compromised when a serious imbalance of power prevails between the  
3521 researcher and participants. Resulting harms are seldom intentional but nonetheless real for  
3522 the research participants. In the case of Aboriginal peoples, abuses stemming from research  
3523 have included: misappropriation of cultural heritage such as songs, stories and artefacts;  
3524 devaluing of Indigenous knowledge as primitive or superstitious; violation of community  
3525 norms regarding the use of human tissue and remains; and dissemination of information  
3526 that misrepresented or stigmatized whole communities.

3527 Where the social, cultural or linguistic distance between the community and researchers  
3528 from outside the community is significant, the potential for misunderstanding is likewise  
3529 significant. Engagement between the community involved and researchers, initiated prior to  
3530 recruiting participants and maintained over the course of the research, can enhance ethical  
3531 practice and the quality of research. Taking time to establish a relationship can promote  
3532 mutual trust and communication, identify mutually beneficial research goals, define  
3533 appropriate research collaborations or partnerships, and ensure that the conduct of research  
3534 adheres to the core principles of justice, respect for persons and the concern for welfare of  
3535 the collective, as understood by all parties involved.



3536 **Research Involving Indigenous Peoples in Other Countries**

3537 “Indigenous peoples” is a term used in international discourse, roughly equivalent to the  
3538 umbrella term “Aboriginal peoples” in Canada. For the purposes of this Policy, the  
3539 following are considered to be among the characteristics that identify them. Indigenous  
3540 people are the descendants of those who inhabited a country or a geographical region prior  
3541 to the time when people of different cultures or ethnic origins arrived and established  
3542 dominance through conquest, occupation or settlement. They display resolve to maintain  
3543 and adapt their heritage and historical links to their territories and associated natural  
3544 resources.

3545 Although the present chapter addresses research involving Aboriginal peoples in Canada,  
3546 researchers, REBs, research participants and the research community at large may find the  
3547 guidance articulated here useful when undertaking research or reviewing a proposal  
3548 involving Indigenous peoples in other countries or ethno-cultural groups who endorse  
3549 collective decision making as a complement to individual consent. However, the  
3550 importance of seeking local guidance in applying or adapting ethical guidelines articulated  
3551 in this Policy must be emphasized.

3552 For considerations that apply to research conducted in another country, see Chapter 8,  
3553 Section B.

3554 **C. Applying Provisions of this Policy in Aboriginal Contexts**

3555 **The Requirement of Community Engagement in Aboriginal Research**

3556 **Article 9.1** Where the research is likely to affect an Aboriginal community or  
3557 communities to which potential participants belong, and where any of the  
3558 following conditions apply, researchers shall seek engagement with the  
3559 relevant community:

- 3560 (a) research is conducted on First Nations, Inuit or Métis lands;
- 3561 (b) recruitment criteria include Aboriginal identity as a factor for the entire  
3562 study or for a subgroup in the study;
- 3563 (c) the research seeks input from participants regarding a community’s  
3564 cultural heritage, artefacts, Indigenous knowledge or unique  
3565 characteristics;
- 3566 (d) Aboriginal identity or membership in an Aboriginal community is used  
3567 as a variable for the purpose of analysis of the research data;
- 3568 (e) the interpretation of the research results will refer to Aboriginal  
3569 communities, peoples, language, history or culture.

3570 **Application** While the legal basis for research oversight may vary depending on the  
3571 community, the practical requirement of engaging community

3572 representatives and the ethical obligation to respect community views of  
3573 welfare remain consistent.

3574 Paragraph (a) refers to First Nations, Inuit and Métis lands that include  
3575 Indian reserves, Métis settlements, lands allocated under an Inuit or First  
3576 Nations land claim agreements and lands over which a claim has been  
3577 asserted but not settled, as defined by the Aboriginal community  
3578 prospectively engaged in research.

3579 Paragraph (c) refers to cultural heritage, which includes but is not limited to  
3580 First Nations, Inuit and Métis peoples' relations with particular territories,  
3581 material objects, collective knowledge and skills, and intangibles that are  
3582 transmitted from one generation to the next – such as folklore, customs,  
3583 representations or practices. Cultural heritage is a dynamic concept, in that  
3584 materials, knowledge and practices are continuously adapted to the realities of  
3585 current experience. For a further reference to cultural heritage see, for example,  
3586 the United Nations *Declaration on the Rights of Indigenous Peoples* cited  
3587 under References at the end of this chapter.

3588 Cultural heritage research such as archaeological research and handling of  
3589 artefacts may raise ethical obligations important to the Aboriginal  
3590 community that may not be addressed in academic research protocols.  
3591 Researchers and communities should agree in advance on how to reconcile  
3592 or address these divergent perspectives. (See Article 9.12).

3593 Paragraph (c) also refers to Indigenous knowledge. Appropriation of  
3594 Indigenous knowledge, treatment of such knowledge as a commodity to be  
3595 traded, or making unauthorized adaptations for commercial purposes may  
3596 cause offence or harm to communities from which the knowledge originates.  
3597 Such conduct has prompted initiatives in various countries and international  
3598 agencies to address unethical, unfair and inequitable treatment of Indigenous  
3599 knowledge and knowledge holders. (See Article 9.18).

## 3600 **Forms of Engagement**

3601 Community engagement as defined in this Policy can take varied forms. In geographic and  
3602 organizational communities that have local governments or formal leadership, engagement  
3603 would normally take the form of review and approval of a research proposal by a designated  
3604 body prior to recruiting participants. In less structured situations (for example, a community of  
3605 interest), a key consideration for researchers, prospective participants and REBs is  
3606 determining the nature and extent of community engagement required. In some situations, the  
3607 determination may be that the welfare of relevant communities is not affected, and consent of  
3608 individuals is sufficient. Communities lacking infrastructure to support community  
3609 engagement should not be deprived of opportunities to participate in guiding research  
3610 affecting their welfare. (See Article 9.14).

3611 **Article 9.2** The nature and extent of community engagement in a project shall be  
3612 determined jointly by the researcher and the relevant community and shall be  
3613 appropriate to community characteristics and the nature of the research.

3614 **Application** First Nations, Inuit and Métis communities differ from one another, and they  
3615 encompass increasing diversity within their own boundaries as a result of  
3616 formal education, employment, mobility and intermarriage with non-Aboriginal  
3617 persons. This diversity makes generalizations about the form of community  
3618 engagement inappropriate. It also increases the importance of clarifying mutual  
3619 expectations and obligations with the community and incorporating them in a  
3620 research agreement.

3621 The following list, which is not exhaustive, provides examples to illustrate  
3622 the forms of Aboriginal engagement that might be appropriate in various  
3623 types of research.

3624 1) Research directly involving a community on First Nation, Inuit or Métis  
3625 lands with a formal governance structure. For example, a project that  
3626 examines the incidence of diabetes in Pond Inlet, Nunavut, or the impact  
3627 of contaminants in animals and plants used for country food on Inuit  
3628 health.

3629       ▪ Permission of the land claims organization that carries authority to  
3630 approve research in Nunavut is required. Agreement of the hamlet  
3631 council in Pond Inlet will normally be a condition of approval. The  
3632 local health committee may co-manage the project.

3633 2) Research involving Aboriginal people who comprise a sizeable  
3634 proportion of the study or community and where Aboriginal-specific  
3635 conclusions are intended. For example, a comparative study of access to  
3636 public housing in Prince Albert, Saskatchewan.

3637       ▪ First Nations in the district, represented by their tribal council, the  
3638 local Métis association, urban Aboriginal and women’s organizations  
3639 may partner with the Prince Albert city council to sponsor,  
3640 implement and use the results of the housing study.

3641 3) Research focusing on a larger community that is known to include  
3642 Aboriginal people (regardless of their proportion), and where  
3643 Aboriginal-specific conclusions are anticipated. For example, a study of  
3644 student retention in high schools in the Sault Ste. Marie district of  
3645 Ontario.

3646       ▪ A committee to advise the District Board of Education and the  
3647 researchers conducting the retention study may be convened,  
3648 representing First Nations, Métis organizations and urban Aboriginal  
3649 people whose children are affected.

3650 4) Research involving Aboriginal people who comprise a sizeable  
3651 proportion of the larger community that is the subject of research even if  
3652 no Aboriginal-specific conclusions will be made. For example, research  
3653 on employment development programs serving residents of the inner city  
3654 of Winnipeg in Manitoba.

- 3655  
3656  
3657  
3658  
3659
- Aboriginal service agencies or political organizations may be engaged to help recruit Aboriginal participants and secure community representation on an oversight committee, to ensure cultural sensitivity in collecting and interpreting data on employment program impacts.
- 3660  
3661  
3662  
3663  
3664  
3665
- 5) Interviewing a sample of individuals of Aboriginal ancestry across Canada on the impact of a policy in their lives, where the results are not attributable to or likely to affect the community or communities with which they may identify. For example, survey research on the implementation of *Indian Act* provisions requiring ministerial approval of an “Indian’s” will.
- 3666  
3667  
3668  
3669  
3670  
3671  
3672  
3673  
3674  
3675
- First Nations, Inuit and Métis individuals, whether or not they identify as members of an Aboriginal community, freedom of expression as does any citizen. They are free to consent and to participate in research projects that they consider of personal or social benefit. If the project is unlikely to affect the welfare of the individuals’ communities, local community engagement is not required under this Policy. The necessity or desirability of engaging regional or national representatives of Aboriginal communities in policy research may, however, be determined by other considerations.
- 3676  
3677  
3678  
3679  
3680
- 6) Natural sciences research on First Nation, Inuit or Métis lands and treaty and land claims agreement areas where Aboriginal people may act as co-investigators or benefit from findings. For example, research focusing exclusively on contaminants in animals or plants in Nunavik that does not make inferences regarding food intake.
- 3681  
3682  
3683  
3684  
3685  
3686  
3687  
3688  
3689  
3690
- Research that involves the collection and analysis of tissue samples from animals or plants and not involving human research participants is not covered within the scope of this Policy and does not require REB review. However, funding program guidelines and licensing requirements in the North may impose obligations to engage communities. Community laws, customs or codes of research practice may require securing regional and local permission and reporting findings to communities on whose traditional lands the research takes place. (See NSERC literature on Northern Research Program for professors and students/fellows and Article 9.8 below).
- 3691  
3692  
3693  
3694  
3695
- 7) Research that incidentally involves a small proportion of Aboriginal individuals but is not intended to single out or describe characteristics of Aboriginal people in the study. For example, a study of the effectiveness of therapies to control high blood pressure in a sample of hospital outpatients not designed to collect Aboriginal-specific data.
- 3696  
3697
- Since Aboriginal participation is incidental rather than scheduled, community engagement is not required. If Aboriginal individuals

3698 self-identify during the collection of primary data, researchers should  
3699 inquire whether culturally appropriate assistance is desired to  
3700 interpret or support compliance with study protocols. However, it  
3701 should be noted that including markers of Aboriginal identity in data  
3702 collection may reveal anomalies that warrant further, more targeted  
3703 research, which would require community engagement.

3704 8) Research exclusively based on publicly available information as defined  
3705 by this policy. For example, historical, genealogical or analytical  
3706 research based exclusively on publicly available records or data in  
3707 accordance with legislation.

3708     ▪ Such research does not involve the collection of data from  
3709 communities directly or from living persons and is not subject to  
3710 REB review. (See Article 2.2). Community engagement is not  
3711 required. However, findings of such research nevertheless may have  
3712 an impact on the identity or heritage of persons or communities.  
3713 Researchers should seek culturally informed advice before use of  
3714 such data to determine if harms may result and if benefit-sharing  
3715 should be explored with the original source community. (See Article  
3716 9.15).

### 3717 **Respect for First Nation, Inuit and Métis Governing Authorities**

3718 **Article 9.3** Where a proposed research project is to be conducted on lands under the  
3719 jurisdiction of a First Nation government, an Inuit land claim organization or a  
3720 Métis government, or on traditional lands subject to a claim as defined by the  
3721 community, researchers shall seek the engagement of formal leaders of the  
3722 community, except as provided under Articles 9.5, 9.6 and 9.7.

3723 **Application** Formal leaders with governance responsibilities on First Nations, Inuit or Métis  
3724 lands are charged with protecting the welfare of the community. They may  
3725 approve research or delegate responsibility for reviewing proposals to a local or  
3726 regional body. Article 8.3 applies in such cases, requiring ethics review of  
3727 research proposals both by “(i) the REB at the Canadian institution under the  
3728 auspices of which the research is being conducted and (ii) the REB or other  
3729 responsible review body or bodies, if any, at the host research site.” Ethics  
3730 review by the institutional REB and the responsible community body are  
3731 required in advance of recruiting and securing consent of individuals.

3732 Research involving multiple geographic communities raises complex issues of  
3733 review and approval. Regional bodies or national organizations may facilitate  
3734 ethics review and make recommendations but the decision on participation  
3735 normally rests with the local community.

### 3736 **Engagement with Organizations and Communities of Interest**

3737 **Article 9.4** Aboriginal organizations, including First Nations, Inuit and Métis  
3738 representative bodies, service organizations and communities of interest shall

3739 be recognized as communities for the purposes of collaboration in research  
3740 undertakings and representation of their members in ethical review and  
3741 oversight of projects.

3742 **Application** Research affecting First Nations, Inuit and Métis peoples is often initiated  
3743 outside the Aboriginal community and carried out by non-Aboriginal  
3744 personnel. Researchers have often neglected to inform participants and  
3745 communities of results and they have afforded Aboriginal people little  
3746 opportunity to correct misinformation or to challenge ethnocentric  
3747 interpretations. In light of such experience, many Aboriginal people feel  
3748 apprehensive about the activities of researchers and they are reluctant to  
3749 participate in research.

3750 A majority of persons who self-identify as Aboriginal live in rural and urban  
3751 communities outside of designated Aboriginal lands. Issues affecting their  
3752 welfare are under-researched. Political organizations, Friendship Centres,  
3753 housing associations, healing circles and many other groups that have come  
3754 together are potential partners in creating knowledge to enhance the welfare  
3755 of their own communities and society at large.

#### 3756 **Complex Authority Structures**

3757 **Article 9.5** Where alternatives to securing the agreement of formal leadership are proposed  
3758 for research on First Nations, Inuit or Métis lands or in organizational  
3759 communities, researchers should engage community processes and document  
3760 measures taken, to enable the REBs to review the proposal with due  
3761 consideration of complex community authority structures.

3762 **Application** REBs should not assume that approval of a project by formal leaders is the only  
3763 avenue for endorsing a project. In some communities and some domains of  
3764 knowledge, authority to permit and monitor research rests with knowledge  
3765 keepers designated by custom rather than election or appointment. In First  
3766 Nations settings, a confederacy council spanning several communities may be  
3767 recognized as having authority over its members' traditional knowledge. In an  
3768 Inuit community, the hamlet council, an Elders' circle and a Hunters' and  
3769 Trappers' society may have overlapping responsibility and expertise with  
3770 respect to the knowledge being sought. Métis Elders dedicated to conserving  
3771 Michif language may assert their autonomy from political leaders but choose to  
3772 collaborate with educational or cultural agencies.

3773 The preferred course is to secure approval for research from both formal  
3774 leaders of a community and customary authority. This is especially important  
3775 for outsiders to communities, whose presence or intentions might be  
3776 challenged. Researchers should engage community processes, including the  
3777 guidance of moral authorities such as Elders, to avert potential conflict. These  
3778 measures should be documented to assist the REB in considering the  
3779 community engagement processes proposed. (See Article 9.10).

3780 **Recognizing Diverse Interests Within Communities**

3781 **Article 9.6** In engaging communities, researchers should ensure, to the extent possible,  
3782 that they take into consideration the views of all relevant sectors, including  
3783 communities of interest who may not have a voice in the formal leadership  
3784 of a geographical or organizational community. Vulnerable groups or  
3785 individuals may need or desire special measures to ensure their safety or  
3786 inclusion.

3787 **Application** Vulnerable or marginalized subgroups within communities should be not be  
3788 deprived of opportunities to participate in guiding research affecting their  
3789 welfare. Covert research or direct challenges to legitimate authority risk  
3790 increasing participants' vulnerability, deepening rifts within the community  
3791 and actually impeding the advancement of social justice. Strategies that have  
3792 proven effective to accommodate diversity include: advocacy by moral  
3793 authorities in the community; special measures to protect the identity of  
3794 participants in small communities; identifying research questions that include  
3795 rather than divide interest groups; or expanding the coverage of a project to  
3796 multiple communities where personal interests are less prominent. In some  
3797 cases, the risks to participants and communities involved with or affected by  
3798 the proposed research outweigh the potential benefits likely to be gained and  
3799 the research should not be undertaken.

3800 **Critical Inquiry**

3801 **Article 9.7** Research that critically examines the conduct of public institutions or persons  
3802 in authority may do so ethically, notwithstanding the usual requirement, in  
3803 research involving Aboriginal peoples, of engaging representative leaders.

3804 **Application** Considerations in conducting critical inquiry are discussed more fully in  
3805 Article 3.6. As in the case of research involving vulnerable subgroups within  
3806 an Aboriginal community (see Article 9.6), critical inquiry will require  
3807 creative approaches to ensure that cultural norms are respected, that the  
3808 safety of participants is protected and that the welfare of the larger  
3809 community is not disrupted.

3810 For example, the Sisters in Spirit project of the Native Women's Association  
3811 of Canada (NWAC) launched in 2005 for a five-year period illustrates  
3812 research of national scope that incorporates a critical dimension. The project  
3813 involves interviewing families of missing and murdered Aboriginal women  
3814 in urban and rural settings, on and off First Nations territory. It examines,  
3815 among other matters, the adequacy of public institutions and services,  
3816 Aboriginal and non-Aboriginal, to protect the women's well-being and  
3817 support families in their efforts to deal with their losses. The objective is to  
3818 effect policy change and improve the safety and well-being of Aboriginal  
3819 women in Canada. NWAC has published its commitment to participatory  
3820 research and the principles and practices that protect the privacy and well-  
3821 being of participants. The project builds on NWAC's established moral  
3822 authority to investigate sensitive matters, welcomes endorsement by a

3823 national political organization, engages the cooperation of regional health  
3824 directors where available, and informs local authorities of the presence of its  
3825 researchers on First Nations territory.

## 3826 **Respect for Community Customs and Codes of Practice**

3827 **Article 9.8** Researchers have an obligation to become informed about and to respect the  
3828 relevant customs and codes of research practice that apply in the particular  
3829 community or communities affected by their research. Inconsistencies between  
3830 community custom and this Policy should be identified and addressed, where  
3831 possible, in advance of initiating the research.

3832 **Application** First Nations, Inuit and Métis codes of research practice derive from laws and  
3833 customs of predominantly oral cultures. While some rules may be in written  
3834 form, their interpretation is dependent on experiential knowledge acquired  
3835 through interactions in the community. An example is the strict limitation on  
3836 making publicly available sacred knowledge that might be revealed within a  
3837 trusting relationship. In academic culture, rules regarding limits on disclosure  
3838 of information would reasonably be incorporated in a research protocol.

3839 In Aboriginal communities, custom may restrict the observation, recording or  
3840 reporting of ceremonies or certain performances and require approval of  
3841 appropriate individuals. Article 10.3 addresses research involving observational  
3842 studies, the requirement for research ethics review and the ethical implications  
3843 associated with observational research approaches, which may infringe on  
3844 consent and privacy.

3845 Many First Nations communities across Canada have adopted an ethics code  
3846 originally developed to govern practice in the First Nations Regional Health  
3847 Survey. It asserts ownership, control, access and possession of research  
3848 processes affecting participant communities and is generally referred to as  
3849 OCAP. It addresses issues of privacy, intellectual property, data custody and  
3850 secondary use of data, which are also covered later in this chapter. Researchers  
3851 should consult with their own institutions to ensure that the application of  
3852 OCAP or other community-based ethics codes is consistent with institutional  
3853 policies, particularly on issues of intellectual property. Where conflicts exist,  
3854 they should be addressed and resolved prior to the commencement of the  
3855 research. (See Article 9.18).

3856 The ethical duty to respect community laws, customs and responsibilities and  
3857 to engage the relevant community applies equally to First Nations, Inuit and  
3858 Métis researchers conducting research in their own local or cultural  
3859 communities, if they are also members of research institutions adhering to this  
3860 Policy. First Nations, Inuit and Métis scholars attached to academic institutions  
3861 as faculty members, students or research associates are increasingly engaged in  
3862 research involving their own communities and sometimes their own family  
3863 members. They are generally exempt from restrictions on physical access to  
3864 territory or personal access to community members.



3865 Life history and language research are examples of research areas where  
3866 insider relationships and skills provide unique opportunities to extend the  
3867 boundaries of knowledge. While it can be argued that recording the life history  
3868 of an elderly relative is a family matter rather than a community matter, the  
3869 potential impact of such research on the wider community, conflicts between  
3870 the individualist norms of the academic environment and the norms of the  
3871 community, and the possibility of unclear or mistaken assumptions on the part  
3872 of participant and researcher make community engagement important. The  
3873 relevant community to be engaged in such cases might be extended family  
3874 members, peers of the participant with whom the researcher’s interpretations  
3875 can be validated, or Elders knowledgeable about cultural rules governing  
3876 disclosure of privileged information.

3877 **Institutional Ethics Review Required**

3878 **Article 9.9** Ethics review by community REBs or other responsible bodies at the research  
3879 site will not be a substitute for review by institutional REBs and will not  
3880 exempt researchers affiliated with an institution from seeking REB approval at  
3881 their institution, subject to Article 8.1.

3882 **Application** Applying this Policy in a way that accommodates the diversity of First Nations,  
3883 Inuit and Métis cultures and communities is complex. For example, the fit  
3884 between institutional policies and community laws, customs and codes of  
3885 research practice may be unclear, requiring researchers to adapt conventional  
3886 practice or negotiate a resolution.

3887 The presumption that community engagement is required in research involving  
3888 Aboriginal participants is consistent with Article 8.3, which provides that  
3889 research conducted outside the jurisdiction of the researcher’s institution shall  
3890 undergo prospective ethics review both by “(i) the REB at the Canadian  
3891 institution under the auspices of which the research is being conducted and (ii)  
3892 the REB or other responsible review body or bodies, if any, at the host research  
3893 site”.

3894 Article 8.1 permits review models for multi-site research that do not require  
3895 separate ethics review by each site involved in a research project. In cases  
3896 where the community is the direct recipient of funding and has constituted a  
3897 local REB that is party to such an agreement with the researcher’s institution,  
3898 review by the institution’s REB may not be required. (See Article 8.1).

3899 In accordance with Article 8.4, communication between the institutional REB  
3900 and the responsible agency in the community may assist in resolving  
3901 inconsistencies between institutional policy and community laws, customs and  
3902 codes of research practice. If a community ethics review is required in addition  
3903 to the mandatory institutional REB review, reconciling differences may require  
3904 re-submission to one or the other review body.

3905 Researchers and REBs should recognize that ethics review by community  
3906 bodies will often pursue purposes and apply criteria that differ from the

3907 provisions of this Policy. The express purpose of most Aboriginal community  
3908 codes of research practice is to ensure relevance of research undertakings to  
3909 community needs and priorities and respect for First Nations, Inuit and Métis  
3910 identities, cultures and knowledge systems. While community codes of practice  
3911 and research agreements typically share many of the goals of institutional  
3912 policies, the approaches to achieving those goals may differ significantly. It is  
3913 therefore inappropriate to insist on uniformity between community practices  
3914 and institutional policies. For example, when researchers seek to interview  
3915 Elders willing to share their knowledge according to traditional customs of  
3916 consent, REBs should not impose language and processes that may be  
3917 experienced as culturally inappropriate or awkward.

3918 In cases where review of research on topics related to Aboriginal peoples is  
3919 regularly required, the REB membership should be modified to ensure that  
3920 relevant and competent knowledge and expertise in Aboriginal cultures are  
3921 captured within its regular complement. For occasional review of Aboriginal  
3922 research appointment of ad hoc advisors or delegation to a specialized or  
3923 multi-institutional REB may be appropriate. (See Articles 6.4, 6.5 and  
3924 Article 8.1).

3925 The membership of community review bodies of First Nations, Inuit or Métis  
3926 communities will not necessarily duplicate the membership criteria set out in  
3927 this Policy. In the context of scarce resources in community organizations, the  
3928 same personnel may be involved in reviewing the ethics of a proposal and co-  
3929 managing the research. An expectation that conflict of interests will be  
3930 managed by separating ethics review and project management functions may  
3931 impose unsupportable demands on small communities. Researchers and  
3932 participating Aboriginal communities should address how in those  
3933 circumstances ethical safeguards of the community and its members are best  
3934 achieved when multiple roles are assumed by the same person. (See Chapter 7).

### 3935 **Requirement to Advise the REB on a Plan for Community Engagement**

3936 **Article 9.10** When proposing research expected to involve First Nations, Inuit or Métis  
3937 participants, researchers shall advise their REB how they have engaged or  
3938 intend to engage the relevant community or, alternatively, present a rationale as  
3939 to why an exception to the requirement is appropriate.

3940 **Application** In order for REBs to consider whether the form of community engagement is  
3941 appropriate, they will require evidence in the form of (a) a preliminary or  
3942 formal research agreement between the researchers and the responsible body in  
3943 the research site; (b) documentation of a written or oral decision to approve the  
3944 proposed research in a group setting; (c) a written summary of advice received  
3945 from a culturally informed advisory group or ad hoc committee, for example in  
3946 an urban community of interest. Provision of a research agreement is  
3947 particularly emphasized in health research funded by CIHR. (See CIHR  
3948 *Guidelines for Health Research Involving Aboriginal People* in the Reference  
3949 section at end of this chapter).

3950 Where a researcher has an ongoing relationship with a community, a letter  
3951 from formal or customary leaders in the relevant community may signal  
3952 approval to proceed with the research.

3953 Although researchers must offer the option of engagement, a community  
3954 may choose to engage nominally or not at all, despite being willing to allow  
3955 the research to proceed. A community may, for example, support a study  
3956 carried out independent of community influence in order to use scientifically  
3957 defensible results to validate a negotiating position. In instances where  
3958 community engagement is not taken up, researchers must present to the REB  
3959 the steps they took to invite and facilitate engagement by the community.  
3960 Lack of engagement by communities may also be due to inadequate  
3961 financial or human resources. Researchers should demonstrate what efforts  
3962 they have made to assist in capacity-building to facilitate engagement.

### 3963 **Research Agreements**

3964 **Article 9.11** Where a community has formally engaged with a researcher or research team  
3965 through a designated representative, the terms and undertakings of both the  
3966 researcher and the community should be set out in a research agreement before  
3967 participants are recruited.

3968 **Application** Research agreements serve as a primary means of clarifying and confirming  
3969 mutual expectations and, where appropriate, commitments between researchers  
3970 and communities. The scope of the agreement will depend on the level of  
3971 engagement which the community desires, and the availability of resources to  
3972 support community participation.

3973 At a minimum, the agreement should address the ethical protections that would  
3974 apply in securing individual consent for a comparable project and should  
3975 specify any commitments regarding collective community participation and  
3976 decision making, sharing of benefits and review and updating of the agreement.  
3977 Expanding on information normally provided to an individual participant (see  
3978 Article 3.2), agreements typically set out the purpose of the research and detail  
3979 mutual responsibilities in project design, data collection and management,  
3980 analysis and interpretation, production of reports and dissemination of results.

3981 Where a community has adopted or adheres to a code of research practice,  
3982 the agreement may set out detailed responsibilities. In less formal  
3983 circumstances, the agreement may be relatively brief and subject to  
3984 clarification as the project unfolds. *CIHR Guidelines for Health Research  
3985 Involving Aboriginal People* (2007) provide examples of elements that may  
3986 be included in research agreements. (See Reference section at the end of this  
3987 chapter).

3988 Research agreements are increasingly being recognized by academic  
3989 institutions and the researchers associated with them as providing reference  
3990 points for ethics review and approval on such elements as consent,  
3991 confidentiality and intellectual property. Agreements that specify procedures

- 3992 for community ethics review, included as part of the institutional ethics  
3993 application, can provide contextual information and guidance for REBs  
3994 conducting initial review of applications and continuing ethics review  
3995 throughout the project. Researchers should check with their institutions  
3996 regarding signing authority for research agreements that include  
3997 undertakings beyond those normally included in a consent form.
- 3998 Community agreement that a research project may proceed is not a  
3999 substitute for securing the free and informed consent of individuals being  
4000 recruited to participate in that project, in accordance with Chapter 3.
- 4001 Building relationships, clarifying the goals of a project and negotiating  
4002 agreements requires substantial investment of time and resources on the part  
4003 of the community and researcher. Development and participation costs  
4004 incurred by the community and the researcher should be factored into  
4005 proposals to the extent possible within funding guidelines.
- 4006 **Collaborative Research**
- 4007 **Article 9.12** While community engagement is appropriate in any research that affects  
4008 Aboriginal communities, researchers should consider applying a  
4009 collaborative or participatory approach as appropriate to the nature of the  
4010 research and the level of engagement desired by the community.
- 4011 **Application** This Policy encourages collaborative research with First Nations, Inuit and  
4012 Métis communities as a means of facilitating mutually respectful and  
4013 productive relations.
- 4014 Collaborative research is generally understood to involve respectful  
4015 relationships among colleagues, each bringing distinct expertise to a project.  
4016 Collaboration often involves one or other of the partners taking primary  
4017 responsibility for certain aspects of the research, such as addressing sensitive  
4018 issues in community relations or scientific analysis and interpretation of data.
- 4019 Community-based research is research that takes place at community sites and  
4020 involves collaboration between community agencies and scientific researchers.  
4021 It often seeks to address a research topic of practical relevance to the  
4022 community. The terms “community-based research” and “participatory  
4023 research” are often used interchangeably or in combination.
- 4024 Participatory research is a method that promotes research relevant to local  
4025 concerns, action and social change, increased community skills, capacity  
4026 building, sustainability, and knowledge translation. In its fullest expression,  
4027 participatory research engages researchers and community members in an  
4028 active partnership that shares decision making throughout the research process  
4029 – identifying the issue to be researched, developing the research design,  
4030 collecting, analyzing, and interpreting the data, developing conclusions and  
4031 disseminating results.

4032 An outcome of collaborative research highly valued by communities is  
4033 increased capacity to carry out autonomous research that can more readily  
4034 be conducted in Aboriginal languages and oral modes. The exploration,  
4035 articulation and application of Indigenous knowledge in the local  
4036 community is thus advanced, potentially benefiting other communities  
4037 through knowledge transfer.

#### 4038 **Mutual Benefits in Collaborative Research**

4039 **Article 9.13** Collaborative research should be relevant to community needs and priorities  
4040 and should benefit the participating community as well as extend the  
4041 boundaries of societal knowledge.

4042 **Application** To benefit the participating community a research project should be relevant  
4043 and have the potential to produce valued outcomes from the perspective of  
4044 the community and its members.

4045 Relevance and community benefit can take a number of forms depending on  
4046 the type of research being conducted. For example, genetic research on  
4047 diabetes in a First Nations community is unlikely to benefit the community  
4048 in the short term, but collaboration may facilitate increased knowledge of the  
4049 condition and change that improves health outcomes. Collaborative research  
4050 can thus accommodate basic as well as applied research, short-term and  
4051 long-term benefits. In another example, a study of housing and  
4052 homelessness in an Inuit community was initiated at the request of the  
4053 community. Using participatory research methods and social science tools,  
4054 the nature, extent and consequences of the local housing shortage was  
4055 documented, enabling the community to communicate its needs effectively  
4056 to non-Inuit (Qallunaat) authorities. Training workshops provided  
4057 employment and transferred skills to Inuit youth involved in data collection.  
4058 The project provided field experience in community-based research for  
4059 university student assistants and materials useful to other Inuit communities  
4060 in subsequent research.

4061 Communities participating in research place a high priority on access to  
4062 research data that will allow them to address pressing issues through  
4063 community-generated policies, programs and services. They also seek to  
4064 share in the benefits of research activities in the form of direct research  
4065 grants, release time for project personnel, overhead levies on shared projects  
4066 and commercialization of research discoveries.

#### 4067 **Strengthening Research Capacity**

4068 **Article 9.14** Research projects should support the enhancement of the skills of  
4069 community personnel in research methods, project management and ethical  
4070 review and oversight.

4071 **Application** To the degree possible, researchers should foster education and training of  
4072 community members to enhance their participation in research projects.

4073 Employing Aboriginal research assistants and translators is already common  
4074 practice in community-based projects. Extending skills transfer through a  
4075 rational program of training will support collaboration with institutions and  
4076 advance the capacity of communities to initiate and implement their own  
4077 research.

4078 Communities vary widely in the level of human and material resources they  
4079 have available to collaborate with research initiatives. Small, remote  
4080 communities and many urban communities of interest have limited  
4081 organizational resources to advise or collaborate in research. The least  
4082 organizationally developed communities are the most vulnerable to  
4083 exploitation. Researchers, REBs and communities leaders should strive to  
4084 protect the interests of such communities by undertaking research and  
4085 supporting the enhancement of capacity to participate in research.

4086 Funding programs that target the development of Aboriginal research and  
4087 capacity building seek to generate significant research training opportunities  
4088 for Aboriginal students, allowing researchers to include in their grant  
4089 applications stipends for undergraduate, master's degree or doctoral students  
4090 or post-doctoral researchers, as appropriate, with priority given to  
4091 Aboriginal people.

#### 4092 **Recognition of the Role of Elders**

4093 **Article 9.15** Researchers should engage the community in determining appropriate  
4094 recognition for the unique advisory role of Elders in the design and  
4095 execution of research and interpretation of findings in the context of cultural  
4096 norms and traditional knowledge.

4097 **Application** Recognition of Elders may include adherence to customary prescribed  
4098 procedures to solicit their involvement – feasting, gift-giving, providing  
4099 honoraria, acknowledging contributions by name or, as directed,  
4100 withholding the Elder's identity in reports and publications. Elders are now  
4101 being recognized in research proposals and grant applications as providing  
4102 access to community networks, ethical guidance to researchers, and advice  
4103 in interpreting findings in the context of traditional knowledge.

#### 4104 **Privacy and Confidentiality**

4105 **Article 9.16** Where research agreements provide that community partners will have  
4106 limited or full access to identifiable personal data, the consent of participants  
4107 to such disclosure shall form part of the individual consent process.

4108 **Application** Researchers and community partners should consider early in the design of  
4109 the research how community codes of research practice fit with provisions  
4110 for privacy and confidentiality set out in Chapter 5. Where conflicts exist,  
4111 they should be resolved in advance of starting the research.

4112 In some First Nations communities, privacy and confidentiality of  
4113 identifiable personal and community information may be affected by  
4114 application of the principles of ownership, control, access and possession  
4115 (OCAP). (See definition under Article 9.8). The Regional Health Survey  
4116 administered by regional First Nations organizations has addressed  
4117 balancing confidentiality and access by having communities designate a  
4118 regional organization to hold data while local authorities make decisions on  
4119 who can access the data and under what conditions. In practice, the  
4120 organization that serves as data steward evaluates requests for information,  
4121 and its recommendations to community authorities have considerable  
4122 influence.

4123 Small Aboriginal communities are characterized by dense networks of  
4124 relationships, with the result that de-identifying individual data is often not  
4125 sufficient to mask identities, even when data are aggregated. Communities  
4126 themselves have distinguishing characteristics, which in some cases have  
4127 compromised efforts to disguise the site of research and led to the  
4128 stigmatization of whole communities. Some Aboriginal research participants  
4129 are reluctant to speak to interviewers from their own community because of  
4130 privacy concerns.

4131 On the other hand, in some social sciences and humanities research, the  
4132 significance of information is tied to the identity of the source, and  
4133 individual attribution, with consent, is appropriate. Communities partnering  
4134 in research may wish to be acknowledged for their contribution.

4135 Privacy protections in research are evolving. Respect for and  
4136 accommodation of First Nations, Métis and Inuit priorities on joint  
4137 ownership of the products of research and maintaining access to data for  
4138 community use should guide research practices, with appropriate deference  
4139 to federal, provincial and territorial legislation on privacy.

#### 4140 **Interpretation and Dissemination of Research Results**

4141 **Article 9.17** Researchers should afford community representatives engaged in  
4142 collaborative research an opportunity to react and respond to research  
4143 findings before the completion of the final report, in the final report, and in  
4144 all relevant publications resulting from the research.

4145 **Application** Communities consider that their review and approval of reports and  
4146 academic publications is essential to validate findings, protect against  
4147 misinterpretation, and maintain respect for Indigenous knowledge, which  
4148 may entail limitations on its disclosure. If disagreement about interpretation  
4149 arises between researchers and the community and cannot be resolved,  
4150 researchers should afford the group an opportunity to make its views known,  
4151 or they should accurately report any disagreement about the interpretation of  
4152 the data in their reports or publications.

4153 Final reports shall be made available to the community participating in the  
4154 research. Researchers and communities should clarify the extent to which  
4155 research findings will require translation, plain language summaries or oral  
4156 presentations in order to make the research findings accessible to the  
4157 community.

4158 An Aboriginal community and those who participated in the research should  
4159 have the option to decide how collective or individual contributions to the  
4160 research project will be acknowledged and credited in the dissemination of  
4161 results, for example at conferences and seminars.

## 4162 **Intellectual Property**

4163 **Article 9.18** In collaborative research, intellectual property rights including copyright  
4164 should be discussed by researchers, communities and institutions and the  
4165 assignment of rights or the grant of licences and interests in copyrighted  
4166 material that may flow from the research should be specified in advance of  
4167 the research in a research agreement, as appropriate.

4168 **Application** There is an ongoing international debate regarding misappropriation,  
4169 commodification, and unfair or harmful commercial exploitation of  
4170 Indigenous knowledge.

4171 First Nation, Inuit and Métis laws and customs distinguish among  
4172 knowledge that can be publicly disclosed, disclosed to a specific audience or  
4173 disclosed under certain conditions. Determination of what information may  
4174 be shared and with whom will depend on the culture of the Aboriginal  
4175 community in question. Any restrictions on access to or use of traditional or  
4176 sacred knowledge shared in the course of the research project should be  
4177 addressed in the research agreement.

4178 Researchers, institutions and communities may need to adopt a two-tiered  
4179 approach: first to address issues regarding access to data and use or  
4180 publication of findings; and second, to address issues related to commercial  
4181 applications of the results from collaborative research.

4182 Regarding the first issue (access and use of data) a research agreement may  
4183 set out any limits on the disclosure of personal or privileged information,  
4184 (subject to applicable legal and regulatory requirements and the discussion  
4185 in Chapter 5 of this Policy). It might include a right to review reports and  
4186 publications regarding the research prior to publication or limits on the  
4187 release of, or access to research results, subject to applicable laws. The  
4188 agreement may also set out any interests, licences or assignments in  
4189 copyright flowing from publications about or based on the research.

4190 With respect to commercialization of results, the use, assignment or  
4191 licensing of any intellectual property, such as patents or copyright, resulting  
4192 from the research (if any) may also be addressed in an agreement.



4193 Researchers should consult the research office of their institution before  
4194 entering into a research agreement that includes intellectual property  
4195 provisions. Researchers should consult the program literature or policies on  
4196 intellectual property and copyright adopted by the federal research agencies  
4197 NSERC, SSHRC and CIHR available on their websites and seek legal  
4198 advice where appropriate.

4199 It is widely recognized that some Indigenous knowledge may have  
4200 commercial applications and lead to the development of marketable  
4201 products, for example, traditional plant medicines. If the proposed research  
4202 has explicit commercial objectives or direct or indirect links to the  
4203 commercial sector, these should be clearly communicated to all parties as a  
4204 requirement of consent.

#### 4205 **Prospective Collection of Human Biological Material Involving Aboriginal Peoples**

4206 **Article 9.19** As part of community engagement, researchers shall address and specify in  
4207 the research agreement the rights and proprietary interests of individuals and  
4208 communities, to the extent such exist, in human biological materials and  
4209 data to be collected, stored and used in the course of the research.

4210 **Application** Canadian law does not provide clear recognition of property rights in human  
4211 biological materials. Researchers should be aware, however, that Aboriginal  
4212 people and communities express proprietary interests in data and biological  
4213 samples collected for research. Consistent with Chapter 12, and Article 9.11  
4214 of this Policy, researchers and communities should address and specify in  
4215 the research agreement:

- 4216 ▪ the objectives for collection, use and storage of human biological  
4217 materials;
- 4218 ▪ the roles and responsibilities regarding custodianship of the data and the  
4219 samples; and
- 4220 ▪ any future use of these samples and associated data, including material  
4221 transfer agreements to third parties and any subsequent requirements for  
4222 community engagement.

4223 Individuals who are invited to donate biological materials shall give their  
4224 consent in accordance with Articles 12.1 and 12.2.

#### 4225 **Consent and Secondary Use of Data or Human Biological Materials Originating from** 4226 **Aboriginal Peoples**

4227 **Article 9.20** Secondary use of data that is identifiable as originating from a specific  
4228 community, or a segment of the Aboriginal community at large, requires  
4229 REB review and may warrant re-consent from individuals, new or renewed  
4230 agreement of communities, or seeking culturally informed advice about  
4231 protection of cultural heritage or representations of Indigenous knowledge or  
4232 society.

- 4233 **Application** Misrepresentation of Aboriginal peoples, use of data or human biological  
4234 materials without appropriate engagement with the source community or  
4235 consent of participants, and lack of reporting to communities on research  
4236 outcomes have created ongoing sensitivity about secondary use of data  
4237 collected for approved purposes. For example, members of Nuu-chah-nulth  
4238 communities in British Columbia provided blood samples for research on  
4239 rheumatic disease. They vigorously protested use of the blood components  
4240 for subsequent unauthorized genetic research. In addition, there are fears in  
4241 First Nation communities that access to health data for purposes other than  
4242 treatment will facilitate unauthorized government surveillance.
- 4243 The privacy of individual participants in research is normally protected by  
4244 removing information that would identify them personally. De-identified  
4245 data are added to a data pool and are available for analysis and sometimes  
4246 for secondary use. Consistent with the general provisions set out in Chapter  
4247 5, secondary use of data collected initially for other purposes, from which  
4248 personal identifiers have been removed, does not require REB review.
- 4249 As discussed in Chapter 5, access to data containing identifiable personal  
4250 information may be needed for some types of research. For example,  
4251 longitudinal studies require access to identifiable information contained in  
4252 data banks, although consent for additional studies was not obtained from  
4253 original informants and it may be impracticable to obtain it subsequently.  
4254 Such secondary usage requires REB review (see Articles 5.5 to 5.7), and the  
4255 REB may allow an alteration or waiver of consent under certain conditions.  
4256 (See Section B, in Chapter 3).
- 4257 Secondary use of data identifiable as originating from Aboriginal  
4258 participants or communities shall be subject to REB review to avoid harms  
4259 ensuing from inadvertent identification of communities, potential misuse of  
4260 cultural heritage, or misrepresentation of Indigenous knowledge when  
4261 interpretation of data is no longer guided by community engagement. Any  
4262 constraints imposed on use of the data in the original project should be noted  
4263 if such information is available. Consistent with Article 5.6, the researcher  
4264 should propose to the REB an appropriate strategy for securing agreement of  
4265 the relevant individuals or group, or, if this is impossible or impracticable,  
4266 there should be consultation with one or more organizations that are likely to  
4267 represent the views and interests of the original participants.
- 4268 A common example of secondary use of data that are identifiable as  
4269 originating from a specific community without appropriate engagement with  
4270 the community is the practice of accessing traditional plant knowledge from  
4271 the published literature to inform commercial development of products. In  
4272 fields such as ethnobotany there is a significant amount of traditional  
4273 knowledge that was published without the awareness or consent of the  
4274 original knowledge holders. Researchers should seek culturally informed  
4275 advice before use of such data to determine if harms may result and if  
4276 benefit-sharing should be explored with the original source community.

- 4277 **Article 9.21** Researchers who propose research involving secondary use of human  
4278 biological materials originating from Aboriginal peoples shall:
- 4279 (a) obtain REB approval for the proposed research; and
- 4280 (b) engage the community from which the biological materials originated in  
4281 accordance with any existing research agreement or the REB’s direction;  
4282 and
- 4283 (c) obtain consent of individuals from whom the biological materials  
4284 originated unless:
- 4285 (i) an existing research agreement permits secondary use based on  
4286 individual consent given at the time biological materials were  
4287 initially collected; or
- 4288 (ii) the REB and the community agree that individual consent may  
4289 be waived in accordance with Articles 12.3 or 12.4.

4290 **Application** Where the researcher can satisfy the REB that secondary use is consistent  
4291 with an existing research agreement, the REB may require that the  
4292 researcher engage the community from which the biological materials and  
4293 associated identifiable information originate in accordance with the terms of  
4294 the research agreement. New individual consent to secondary use is not  
4295 required where the original consent authorized future use. Where secondary  
4296 use has not been specified in the research agreement and authorized by the  
4297 original individual consent, researchers shall engage the community from  
4298 which the biological materials and identifiable information originate prior to  
4299 initiating secondary use. Individual consent for the secondary use is required  
4300 unless the REB and the community agree that either Article 12.3 or 12.4  
4301 applies.

4302 **Endnotes**

---

<sup>1</sup> *Constitution Act*, 1982, s. 35; [www.laws.justice.gc.ca/en/const/9.html#anchorsc:7-bo-ga:l\\_II](http://www.laws.justice.gc.ca/en/const/9.html#anchorsc:7-bo-ga:l_II)

<sup>2</sup> See Chapter 1, regarding the scope of definitions used in this Policy.

<sup>3</sup> *Constitution Act*, 1982, s. 35; [www.laws.justice.gc.ca/en/const/9.html#anchorsc:7-bo-ga:l\\_II](http://www.laws.justice.gc.ca/en/const/9.html#anchorsc:7-bo-ga:l_II)

**References**

---

- Aboriginal Research Ethics Initiative of the Interagency Advisory Panel on Research Ethics, “Issues and Options for Revisions to the TCPS: Section 6: Research Involving Aboriginal Peoples,” February 2008, [www.pre.ethics.gc.ca/eng/policy-politique/initiatives/reports-rapports/riap-rapa/](http://www.pre.ethics.gc.ca/eng/policy-politique/initiatives/reports-rapports/riap-rapa/)

- Canadian Institutes of Health Research, CIHR *Guidelines for Health Research Involving Aboriginal People*, May 2007, [www.cihr-irsc.gc.ca/e/29134.html](http://www.cihr-irsc.gc.ca/e/29134.html)
- ———, *Best Practices for Protecting Privacy in Health Research*, September 2005, [www.cihr-irsc.gc.ca/e/29072.html](http://www.cihr-irsc.gc.ca/e/29072.html)
- First Nations Regional Longitudinal Health Survey (RHS), [www.rhs-ers.ca/english/](http://www.rhs-ers.ca/english/)
- First Nations Centre. 2007. *OCAP: Ownership, Control, Access and Possession*. Sanctioned by the First Nations Information Governance Committee, Assembly of First Nations. Ottawa: National Aboriginal Health Organization, [www.naho.ca/english/pub\\_research.php](http://www.naho.ca/english/pub_research.php)
- ITK and NRI. 2007. *Negotiating Research Relationships with Inuit Communities: A Guide for Researchers*. Scot Nickels, Jamal Shirley, and Gita Laidler (eds). Inuit Tapiriit Kanatami and Nunavut Research Institute: Ottawa and Iqaluit, 38 pp. [www.itk.ca/publications/negotiating-research-relationships-inuit-communities-guide-researchers](http://www.itk.ca/publications/negotiating-research-relationships-inuit-communities-guide-researchers)
- NAHO Ajunnginiq Centre. *Research and Research Ethics Fact Sheets*, [www.naho.ca/inuit/e/ethics/](http://www.naho.ca/inuit/e/ethics/)
- Royal Commission on Aboriginal People. *Report of the Royal Commission on Aboriginal Peoples (1996)*. “Ethical Guidelines for Research” in *Volume 5, Renewal: A Twenty-Year Commitment*. Canada Communications Group, pp. 325-8. [www.ainc-inac.gc.ca/ap/rrc-eng.asp](http://www.ainc-inac.gc.ca/ap/rrc-eng.asp)
- United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organization, *Universal Declaration on Bioethics and Human Rights*. Adopted October 19, 2005 by the 334th session of the General Conference of UNESCO. 2005. [www.portal.unesco.org/shs/en/ev.php-URL\\_ID=1883&URL\\_DO=DO\\_TOPIC&URL\\_SECTION=201.html](http://www.portal.unesco.org/shs/en/ev.php-URL_ID=1883&URL_DO=DO_TOPIC&URL_SECTION=201.html)
- United Nations (1992). *Convention of Biological Diversity*. [www.cbd.int/convention/convention.shtml](http://www.cbd.int/convention/convention.shtml)
- United Nations (2007). *Declaration on the Rights of Indigenous Peoples*. [www.un.org/esa/socdev/unpfii/documents/DRIPS\\_en.pdf](http://www.un.org/esa/socdev/unpfii/documents/DRIPS_en.pdf)

# Chapter 10

4303

4304

## QUALITATIVE RESEARCH

4305 Researchers in social sciences and humanities – such as anthropology, sociology,  
4306 psychology, criminology, business administration, political science, communications,  
4307 education and history – have a common belief in the desirability of trying to understand  
4308 human action through systematic study and analysis. Some researchers use quantitative  
4309 research approaches, others opt for qualitative research methods, and some use a  
4310 combination of both.

4311 Qualitative research has a long history in many well-established disciplines in the social  
4312 sciences and humanities, as well as many areas in the health sciences (e.g. nursing).  
4313 Research developments point to an increasing prevalence of qualitative approaches,  
4314 whether in health research or in social sciences and humanities disciplines. Within specific  
4315 disciplines, ethics guidelines have also been created to address the issues inherent in the use  
4316 of particular methods, technologies, settings, etc. Qualitative research approaches are  
4317 inherently dynamic and are grounded in different assumptions than those that shape  
4318 quantitative research approaches. Many of the research practices and methodological  
4319 requirements that characterize qualitative research approaches parallel those that  
4320 characterize quantitative approaches – concerns regarding research quality, for example –  
4321 but, as is the case with all research involving human participants, the criteria are adapted to  
4322 the particular subject matter, context and epistemological assumptions about the nature of  
4323 knowledge in the specific area of research of the specific project.

4324 This chapter seeks to provide specific guidance on some issues that are particularly  
4325 germane to qualitative research although such guidance may also be applicable to research  
4326 using quantitative or mixed methods. In particular, it addresses issues of consent, privacy  
4327 and confidentiality that may have unique manifestations in qualitative research. Some  
4328 procedural issues related to the dynamics and characteristics of qualitative research that  
4329 affect the timing and scope of the research ethics review process are detailed below.

4330 Researchers and research ethics boards (REBs) should also consult other relevant chapters  
4331 of the Policy for additional guidance on principles, norms and practices applicable to  
4332 qualitative research.

### 4333 **A. The Nature of Qualitative Research**

4334 Qualitative research reflects an approach that highlights the importance of understanding  
4335 how people think about the world and how they act and behave in it. This approach requires  
4336 researchers to understand phenomena based on discourse, actions and documents and how  
4337 and why individuals interpret and ascribe meaning to what they say and do, and to other  
4338 aspects of the world (including other people) they encounter.

4339 Some qualitative studies extend beyond individuals’ personal experiences to explore  
4340 interactions and processes within organizations or other environments. Knowledge at both  
4341 an individual and a cultural level is treated as socially constructed. This implies that all  
4342 knowledge is at least to some degree interpretive and hence, dependent on social context. It  
4343 is also shaped by the personal perspective of the researcher as an observer and analyst. As a  
4344 result, qualitative researchers devote a great deal of attention to demonstrating the  
4345 trustworthiness of their findings using a range of methodological strategies.

4346 The section below provides a summary of the general approach as well as methodological  
4347 requirements and practices of qualitative research.

#### 4348 **General Approach and Methodological Requirements and Practices**

4349 (a) **Inductive Understanding:** Many forms of qualitative research entail gaining an  
4350 inductive understanding of the world of research participants to acquire an  
4351 analytical understanding of how they view their actions and the world around them.  
4352 In some projects, this approach also applies to the study of particular social settings,  
4353 processes and experiences.

4354 To the extent that the methods involve direct interaction with participants, there is  
4355 often an emphasis on gaining insights into participants’ perceptions of themselves  
4356 and others, and of the meanings that research participants attach to their thoughts  
4357 and behaviours.

4358 (b) **Diversity of Approaches:** There is no single approach in qualitative research. Each  
4359 field or discipline, and even individual scholars within a discipline, have different  
4360 perspectives on and approaches to the use of qualitative methods. Qualitative  
4361 research uses a variety of theoretical approaches, questions that guide the research,  
4362 methodologies, epistemological approaches and techniques that allow researchers to  
4363 enter the research participants’ world or to engage with particular social  
4364 environments. Methodological approaches include, but are not limited to,  
4365 ethnography, participatory action research, oral history, phenomenology, narrative  
4366 inquiry, grounded theory and discourse analysis. The term “qualitative research”  
4367 covers a wide range of overlapping paradigms or perspectives.

4368 (c) **Dynamic, Reflective and Continuous Research Process:** The emergence during  
4369 the course of the research itself of questions, concepts, strategies, theories and ways  
4370 to gather and engage with the data (e.g. in emergent design research, see Article  
4371 10.6) requires a constant reflective approach and questioning from the researcher.  
4372 Such flexibility, reflexivity and responsiveness contribute to the overall strength and  
4373 rigour of data collection and analysis.

4374 (d) **Diverse, Multiple and Often Evolving Contexts:** Qualitative research takes place in  
4375 a variety of contexts, each of which presents unique ethical issues. As knowledge is  
4376 considered to be context-contingent in qualitative research, these studies tend to focus  
4377 on particular individuals, sites or concepts that are empirically derived from other  
4378 social settings – and the researcher’s priority is to understand that social setting  
4379 involving those people at this time.

4380 Researchers sometimes engage in research that questions social structures and  
4381 activities that create or result in inequality and injustice. They may involve research  
4382 participants who are highly vulnerable because of the social and/or legal stigmatization  
4383 that is associated with their activity or identity and who may have little trust in the law,  
4384 social agencies, or university authorities, or they may involve research participants,  
4385 such as business executives or government officials, who may be more powerful than  
4386 the researchers.

4387 (e) **Data Collection and Sample Size:** There is generally a greater emphasis placed on  
4388 depth of research than on breadth. Most qualitative researchers would emphasize  
4389 gathering diverse but overlapping data on a limited number of cases or situations to  
4390 the point of data saturation or thematic redundancy. Samples and research sites in  
4391 these studies are chosen because they are viewed as particularly useful or rich  
4392 sources of information for furthering one’s understanding of phenomena of interest,  
4393 not because the results may prove statistically significant.

4394 A researcher may rely on multiple sources of information and data gathering  
4395 strategies to enhance data quality. Researchers use a variety of methods for data  
4396 gathering, including interviews, participant observation, focus groups and other  
4397 techniques. In some cases, gathering of trustworthy data comes best from closeness  
4398 and extended contact with research participants. In other cases, researchers and  
4399 participants may continue research exchanges through electronic or other means  
4400 after collection of data in the field. Qualitative studies of textual and image-based  
4401 materials, such as published books, websites, interview transcripts, photographic  
4402 images, or video, use a variety of content analysis techniques.

4403 Appropriate treatments of data after they are gathered may vary greatly (see Article  
4404 10.5 and also Article 5.3). At the time of the initial consent discussion, researchers  
4405 inform potential research participants about the confidentiality of the data and  
4406 discuss the expectations of research participants (See Chapters 2, 5 and 9).

4407 (f) **Research Goals and Objectives:** The aims of qualitative research are very diverse,  
4408 both within and across disciplines. The intended goals of qualitative projects may  
4409 include “giving voice” to a particular population, engaging in research that is  
4410 critical of settings and systems or the power of those being studied, affecting change  
4411 in a particular social environment, or exploring previously understudied phenomena  
4412 to develop new theoretical approaches to research.

4413 (g) **Dynamic, Negotiated and Often Ongoing Consent Process:** Entry into a  
4414 particular setting for research purposes sometimes requires negotiation with the  
4415 population of interest; sometimes the researcher cannot ascertain the process in  
4416 advance of the research, in part because the relevant contexts within which the  
4417 research occurs evolve over time.

4418 In some cases, research participants hold equal or greater power in the researcher-  
4419 participant relationship, such as in community-based and/or organizational research  
4420 when a collaborative process is used to define and design the research project and  
4421 questions, or where participants are public figures or hold other positions of power  
4422 (e.g. research involving economic, social, political or cultural elites). In other cases,

4423 researchers themselves may hold greater power when access to prospective  
4424 participant populations is gained through gatekeepers with whom the researcher has  
4425 established a relationship (e.g. when a researcher engages with the police to do  
4426 research in relation to a problem population, or when researchers engage with  
4427 prison authorities to do research with offenders).

4428 (h) **Research Partnerships:** Access to particular settings and populations is sometimes  
4429 developed over time, and the relationships that are formed may well exist outside  
4430 the research setting per se, which sometimes makes it difficult to determine exactly  
4431 where the “research” relationship begins and ends. In many cases, despite in-depth,  
4432 advance preparation, a researcher may not know until the actual data collecting  
4433 starts just where the search will lead. Indeed, the emergent nature of many  
4434 qualitative studies makes the achievement of rapport with participants and feelings  
4435 of interpersonal trust crucial to the generation of questions considered important or  
4436 interesting by both parties and of dependable data. Research often becomes a  
4437 collaborative process negotiated between the research participant(s) and the  
4438 researcher, requiring considerable time spent initially simply figuring out the focus  
4439 of the research.

4440 In certain cases, contacts between researchers and participants can extend over a  
4441 lifetime, and these individuals may engage in a variety of relationships over and  
4442 above their specific “research” relationship.

4443 (i) **Research Results:** Transferability of results from one setting to another is often  
4444 viewed as more of a theoretical issue than a procedural or sampling issue.

## 4445 **B. Research Ethics Review of Qualitative Research**

4446 This section provides guidance on implications particularly germane to the use of qualitative  
4447 approaches for the ethics review process. This section should also be read in conjunction with  
4448 other chapters of this Policy.

4449 Qualitative research can pose unique ethical issues around gaining access, building rapport,  
4450 using data and publishing results. Researchers and REBs should consider issues of consent,  
4451 confidentiality and privacy, and relationships between researchers and participants in the  
4452 design, review and conduct of the research. Some of these may be identified in the design  
4453 phase, but others will arise during the research itself, which will require the exercise of  
4454 discretion, sound judgment and flexibility in the context of a proportionate approach to the  
4455 level of risk and potential benefit arising from the research, and the welfare of the participants  
4456 individually or collectively.

### 4457 **Timing of the REB Review**

4458 **Article 10.1** Researchers shall submit their research project for REB review and approval of  
4459 its ethical acceptability prior to the start of recruitment of research participants  
4460 or access to data. Subject to the exception in Article 10.6, REB review is not  
4461 required for the initial exploratory phases involving contact with individuals or  
4462 communities intended to establish research partnerships or the design of a  
4463 research study. (See Article 6.11).



4464 **Application** It is sometimes difficult to ascertain the beginning and end of a qualitative  
4465 research project. Access to particular settings and populations often develops  
4466 over time, and it is not unusual for researchers to be passive observers or  
4467 simply passively interested in a setting for some time before any formal effort  
4468 is made to establish a “research” relationship. Preliminary activities may  
4469 include note taking, diary writing, and observation made long before the  
4470 researcher formalizes a research project. These types of preliminary activities  
4471 are not subject to REB review. (See Article 6.11).

4472 Researchers need to have the opportunity to engage in preliminary visits and  
4473 dialogue to explore possible research relationships and define research  
4474 collaborations with particular settings or communities, including the  
4475 determination of research questions, methods, targeted sample and sample size,  
4476 and inclusion of community-based concerns into the project design and data  
4477 collections. REBs should be aware that dialogue between researchers and  
4478 communities at the outset and prior to formal REB review is an integral  
4479 component of the research design. Researchers may need to consult informally  
4480 the REB when ethics issues arise prior to the data collection or inform the REB  
4481 of such issues over the course of the research.

4482 Qualitative research approaches involving a community, group or population of  
4483 interest (e.g. marginalized or privileged groups) follows a process of prior  
4484 dialogue, exchanges and negotiation of the research, which precedes the formal  
4485 data collection involving human participants. For instance, in research in  
4486 Aboriginal communities or involving Aboriginal populations (see Chapter 9) or  
4487 other types of community-based collaborative research, it may be desirable to  
4488 obtain permission to proceed from community leaders, Elders or  
4489 representatives before seeking individual consent.

#### 4490 **Modalities of Expression of Consent**

4491 **Article 10.2** Researchers shall explain in their research design the consent procedures and  
4492 strategies they plan to use for documenting consent.

4493 **Application** REBs should consider the range of strategies for documenting the consent  
4494 process that may be used by researchers using qualitative research  
4495 approaches. Under a variety of circumstances, written consent is not  
4496 required in qualitative research. However, where there are valid reasons for  
4497 not recording consent in writing, the procedures used to seek consent must  
4498 be documented.

4499 The consent process should reflect trust between the research participants  
4500 and the researcher. Often this is based on mutual understanding of the  
4501 project’s goals and objectives. The research participant may sense attempts  
4502 to legalize or formalize the process as a violation of that trust. Qualitative  
4503 researchers use a range of consent procedures, including oral consent, field  
4504 notes, and other strategies such as recording (audio or video, or other  
4505 electronic means) for documenting the consent process. Evidence of consent

4506 may also be documented via completed questionnaires (in person, by mail or  
4507 by email or other electronic means).

4508 REBs may need to consider the power relationship that might exist between  
4509 researchers and research participants and whether a waiver of the  
4510 requirement for signed written consent may affect the welfare of the  
4511 participants. In cases where the research participant holds a position of  
4512 power or routinely engages in communicative interactions similar to those  
4513 involved in the research by virtue of his or her position or profession (e.g. a  
4514 communications officer or spokesperson for an organization), consent can be  
4515 inferred by the participant's agreeing to interact with the researcher for the  
4516 purpose of the research. For example, some political science research  
4517 focuses on power structures and persons in positions of power (e.g. a senior  
4518 partner in a law firm, a cabinet minister or a senior corporate officer). In this  
4519 type of research, where a potential participant agrees to be interviewed on  
4520 the basis of sufficient information provided by the researcher, it may be  
4521 sufficient to signify consent to participate in the research. Researchers  
4522 should demonstrate to the REB that the participant will be informed about  
4523 the option not to participate or to withdraw from the study at any time.  
4524 Nothing in this article should be interpreted to mean that potential  
4525 participants need not to be informed about the study prior to their  
4526 participation in the study.

4527 Researchers and REBs should consult Chapter 3 and Article 3.12 in  
4528 particular for additional details and considerations on consent.

## 4529 **Proportionate Approach to Review of Observational Studies**

4530 **Article 10.3** Research ethics review is required for research involving observation in  
4531 places where personal information is being collected. When considering  
4532 research involving observation in such environments or settings where the  
4533 researcher collects personal information and where individuals or groups  
4534 have a reasonable presumption of privacy, REBs should apply a  
4535 proportionate approach to ethics review.

4536 **Application** In qualitative research, observation is used to study behaviour in a natural  
4537 environment. It often takes place in living, natural and complex communities  
4538 or settings; in physical environments; or in virtual settings such as the  
4539 Internet. Observational studies may be undertaken in public spaces or in  
4540 virtual settings where individuals might have some limited expectation of  
4541 privacy or in private or controlled spaces where individuals have an  
4542 expectation of privacy. The spectrum of settings where observational  
4543 research typically requiring review may occur include, for example,  
4544 classrooms, hospital emergency wards, private Internet chat rooms, or within  
4545 members-only communities or organizations.

4546 Observational research that does not allow for the identification of the  
4547 participants in the dissemination of results, that is not staged by the researcher  
4548 and is non-intrusive should normally be regarded as being of minimal risk. REBs

4549 should focus on projects above the threshold of minimal risk, or they should  
4550 modulate requirements for protection proportionate to the magnitude and  
4551 probability of harms, including the likelihood that published reports may identify  
4552 individuals or groups.

4553 Observational research is of two kinds: “non-participant” where the  
4554 researcher observes, but is not a participant in, the action (also known as  
4555 “naturalistic observation”); and “participant” where the researcher engages  
4556 in, and observes, the action.

4557 Participant observation is often identified with ethnographic research, in  
4558 which the researcher’s role is to gain a “holistic” overview of the studied  
4559 context through engagement in and observation of the setting to describe its  
4560 social environments, processes and relationships. Participant observation  
4561 may or may not require permission to observe and participate in activities of  
4562 the setting studied. In some situations, researchers will identify themselves  
4563 and seek consent from individuals in that setting; in others, researchers will  
4564 engage in covert participant observation. Researchers should demonstrate to  
4565 the REB how they will address ethics issues derived from the specific  
4566 methodological approaches in these types of research.

4567 Observational studies raise concerns for the privacy of those being observed. In  
4568 this regard, the nature of the research, its aims and its potential to invade  
4569 sensitive interests may help researchers better design and conduct research. A  
4570 matter that is public in the researcher’s culture may be private in a prospective  
4571 participant’s culture. For example, observing sacred ceremonies without  
4572 approval from the appropriate individuals or groups (e.g. Elders or traditional  
4573 knowledge holders in Aboriginal research) and without engaging them about  
4574 the subsequent use or interpretation of the data may have unintended negative  
4575 implications. (See Articles 9.6 and 9.8). REBs and researchers need to consider  
4576 methodological requirements of the proposed research project and the ethical  
4577 implications associated with observational approaches, such as the possible  
4578 infringement of consent or privacy. They should pay close attention to the  
4579 ethical implications of such factors as the nature of the activities to be  
4580 observed, the environment in which the activities are to be observed, whether  
4581 the activities are staged for the purpose of the research, the expectations of  
4582 privacy that potential participants might have, the means of recording the  
4583 observations, whether the research records or published reports involve  
4584 identification of the participants, and any means by which those participants  
4585 may give permission to be identified.

#### 4586 *Waiver of Consent*

4587 Because knowledge that one is being observed can be expected to influence  
4588 behaviour, research involving non-participant or covert observation  
4589 generally requires that the participants not know that they are being  
4590 observed (typically there is not direct interaction with the individuals being  
4591 observed), and therefore they cannot consent. Covert observation of queuing  
4592 behaviours in shopping malls, which does not involve any audio or video

4593 recording that may allow identification of particular individuals is one  
4594 example of a study where the research could not be completed if shoppers  
4595 knew that they were being observed. Some forms of qualitative research  
4596 seek to observe and study criminal behaviours, violent groups, or groups  
4597 with restricted membership or access, using covert participant observation.  
4598 For example, some social science research that critically probes the inner  
4599 workings of criminal organizations might never be conducted if the  
4600 participants know in advance that they are being observed. Other  
4601 observational studies may be anonymous but involve intervention by the  
4602 researcher (e.g. studying the propensity of bystanders to help in an  
4603 emergency normally requires a staged emergency). Researchers should  
4604 justify whether the need for such covert research justifies an exception to the  
4605 general requirement for consent, and REBs should exercise their judgment  
4606 taking into consideration the methodological requirements (See Article 3.7).  
4607 Researchers and REBs may also consider whether debriefing is possible or  
4608 necessary.

4609 Researchers should demonstrate to the REB that necessary precautions and  
4610 measures have been taken to address privacy and confidentiality issues in the  
4611 case of observational studies, commensurate with the level of risk and the  
4612 research context. Researchers and REBs should also be aware that, in some  
4613 jurisdictions, publication of identifying information – for example, a photograph  
4614 taken in a public place, but focused on a private individual who was not  
4615 expecting this action – may be interpreted in a civil suit as an invasion of privacy.

4616 Researchers and REBs should consult Chapter 3 and Chapter 5 for  
4617 additional details and considerations.

#### 4618 **Observational Studies Exempt from REB Review**

4619 **Article 10.4** REB review is not required for research involving the observation of people  
4620 in public places where:

- 4621 (a) it does not involve any intervention staged by the researcher or direct  
4622 interaction with the individuals or groups;
- 4623 (b) it does not involve collecting personal information that will be  
4624 disseminated through photographic, film or video footage in the research  
4625 results; and
- 4626 (c) where individuals or groups targeted for observation have no reasonable  
4627 expectation of privacy.

4628 **Application** For the purpose of this Policy, data collection through observation of acts or  
4629 behaviours occurring in public places intended to attract public attention are  
4630 exempt from review by the REB. Research involving observation of people  
4631 in public spaces where there is no presumption of privacy and where no  
4632 personal information is being collected directly from the individuals – for  
4633 example, political rallies, demonstrations, or other public events or settings  
4634 (e.g. a free concert in a public park) – does not require REB review, since it

4635 can be expected that participants are aware of the public nature of the event  
4636 or gathering. Similarly, where individuals should reasonably expect that  
4637 their identities will be evident – for instance, as a result of their celebrity or  
4638 public persona – research that refers to their presence does not require REB  
4639 review. To determine whether Article 10.4 applies, when designing their  
4640 research researchers shall pay attention to whether dissemination of research  
4641 results will allow the identification of individuals in published reports. When  
4642 in doubt, researchers should consult the REB prior to the conduct of the  
4643 research involving observation in public places.

4644 Some activities carried on in public places may be intended to involve a  
4645 particular community of interest and may be based on a limited presumption  
4646 of privacy. For example, individuals involved in religious services or  
4647 practices, or chat rooms on the internet, may assume that participants and  
4648 observers will accord the proceedings some degree of respect. Data  
4649 collection for research purposes through observation of such acts or  
4650 behaviours occurring in public places are subject to research ethics review  
4651 and Article 10.3 of this Policy.

4652 Where no personal information is collected, consent is not required. (See  
4653 also Articles 2.2, 2.3 and Chapter 5).

#### 4654 **Privacy and Confidentiality in the Dissemination of Research Results**

4655 **Article 10.5** Researchers shall discuss with prospective participants whether their identity  
4656 will be disclosed in publications or other means of disseminating research  
4657 results, as appropriate to the research context. Researchers shall record the  
4658 waiver of confidentiality by the participant.

4659 **Application** In some types of qualitative research – oral history, a biographical study or a  
4660 study involving specific personalities, for example – respect for the  
4661 participant’s contribution is shown by identifying the individual in research  
4662 publications or other means of dissemination of the results from the  
4663 research. For instance, in an interview study with visual artists concerning  
4664 some aspect of the way they work, it might be appropriate and respectful to  
4665 identify the respondents. If failing to identify participants would be unethical  
4666 because of the disrespect it would involve, or if informed participants assert  
4667 their desire to be named, then researchers should do so, according to the  
4668 practices of their discipline. For example, social historians seek to document  
4669 and archive the lives of individuals or highlight the contributions that  
4670 ordinary people make in social and political life. In oral history anonymity is  
4671 the exception. Researchers make the option for anonymity known to  
4672 participants as part of the discussion around the nature and conditions of  
4673 their consent.

4674 In some types of critical inquiry, anonymity would result in individuals in  
4675 position of power not being held accountable for their actions and for how  
4676 the exercise of power of some has implications for others. The safeguard for

4677 those in the public arena is through public debate and discourse, and *in*  
4678 *extremis*, through action in the courts for libel.

4679 In much other social science and some humanities research, it is primarily  
4680 the harm that can result from violations of research confidentiality that pose  
4681 risks which the REB and researchers need to address. This can pose a  
4682 particular challenge in qualitative research because of the depth, detail,  
4683 sensitivity and uniqueness of information obtained. The default approach is  
4684 to maintain confidentiality of the research data. Where confidentiality is  
4685 preferred or where there is no compelling reason to the contrary,  
4686 confidentiality would be maintained in a manner commensurate with the  
4687 expectations of the research participants and the project. In some cases, the  
4688 researcher may decide to maintain anonymity of the research participant in  
4689 publications or dissemination of research results to ensure confidentiality of  
4690 data of other research participants.

4691 REBs need to be sensitive to whether anonymity, confidentiality or  
4692 identification is operative in any given research context, and acknowledge  
4693 that individuals may want to be credited for their contribution.

4694 Researchers and REBs should consult Chapter 5 for additional details and  
4695 considerations. (See also Chapter 9).

#### 4696 **Emergent Design**

4697 In qualitative research involving emergent design – that involves data collection and analysis  
4698 that can evolve over the course of a research project in response to what is learned in earlier  
4699 parts of the study – specific questions or other elements of data collection may be difficult to  
4700 articulate fully in the research plan in advance of the project’s implementation.

4701 **Article 10.6** In studies using emergent design in data collection, researchers shall provide  
4702 the REB with all the available information to assist in the review and approval  
4703 of the general procedure for data collection.

4704 Researchers shall inform the REB in cases, where changes to the data  
4705 collection procedures during the conduct of the research may present ethical  
4706 implications and risks to the participants associated with the new proposed  
4707 change.

4708 **Application** Although initial research questions may be outlined in the formalized research  
4709 plan, REBs should be aware that it is quite common for specific questions (as  
4710 well as shifts in data sources, or discovery of data sources) to emerge only  
4711 during the research project. Due to the inductive nature of qualitative research  
4712 and the emergent design approach of the research, some of these elements may  
4713 evolve as the project progresses.

4714 Researchers should provide the REB with all the available information to allow  
4715 for a proportionate review of the study using emergent design. In these cases,  
4716 REBs may ask to review a draft set of sample questions or other outlines of the

4717 procedures to be followed in data collection. REBs should not require  
4718 researchers to provide them with a full questionnaire schedule in advance of  
4719 data collection. Rather, REBs should ensure that the data collection is  
4720 conducted according to methodological requirements and acknowledge that  
4721 questionnaires or interview guide may change to adapt to emerging data or  
4722 circumstances in the field.

4723 Some resulting changes to the research design will not merit requiring  
4724 additional REB review, as they are not necessarily significant changes to the  
4725 approved research. Where changes of data collection procedures would  
4726 represent a change in the level of the risk that may affect the welfare of the  
4727 research participants, researchers should reflect on these changes and notify the  
4728 REB. Additional REB review may be required. (See Chapter 2 and Articles  
4729 6.14 and 6.15).

## 4730 **References**

---

- Australian Research Council, *National Statement on Ethical Conduct in Human Research*, National Health and Medical Research Council, Australian Vice-Chancellors Committee, 2007, [www.nhmrc.gov.au/PUBLICATIONS/synopses/e72syn.htm](http://www.nhmrc.gov.au/PUBLICATIONS/synopses/e72syn.htm)
- Canadian Institutes for Health Research, *CIHR Best Practices for Protection Privacy in Health Research*, 2005, [www.cihr-irsc.gc.ca/e/29072.html](http://www.cihr-irsc.gc.ca/e/29072.html)
- Canadian Institutes for Health Research, Natural Sciences and Engineering Research Council of Canada and Social Sciences and Humanities Research Council of Canada, *Tri-Council Policy Statement: Integrity in Research and Scholarship*, [www.nserc-crsng.gc.ca/NSERC-CRSNG/Policies-Politiques/tpsintegrity-picintegritie\\_eng.asp](http://www.nserc-crsng.gc.ca/NSERC-CRSNG/Policies-Politiques/tpsintegrity-picintegritie_eng.asp)
- Canadian Institutes for Health Research, and Social Sciences and Humanities Research Council of Canada, *The Social Sciences and Humanities in Health Research: A Canadian Snapshot of Fields of Study and Innovative Approaches to Understanding and Addressing Health Issues*, 2000, [www.sshrc.ca/site/about-crsh/publications/ahprc\\_e.pdf](http://www.sshrc.ca/site/about-crsh/publications/ahprc_e.pdf)
- Social Sciences and Humanities Research Council of Canada, *SSHRC Research Data Archiving Policy*, [www.sshrc-crsh.gc.ca/site/apply-demande/policies-politiques/edata-donnees\\_electroniques-eng.aspx](http://www.sshrc-crsh.gc.ca/site/apply-demande/policies-politiques/edata-donnees_electroniques-eng.aspx)





# Chapter 11

4731

4732

## CLINICAL TRIALS

### 4733 A. Overview

4734 A clinical trial is any research study that prospectively assigns human participants or  
4735 groups of humans to one or more health-related interventions to evaluate the effects on  
4736 health outcomes. Clinical trials may also be referred to as interventional trials.  
4737 Interventions include but are not restricted to drugs, radiopharmaceuticals, cells and other  
4738 biological products, surgical procedures, radiologic procedures, devices, genetic therapies,  
4739 natural health products, process-of-care changes, preventive care, and manual, behavioural  
4740 and psychological therapies, etc.<sup>1</sup> Clinical trials may also include questions that are not  
4741 directly related to therapeutic goals – for example, drug metabolism – in addition to those  
4742 that directly evaluate the treatment of study participants.

4743 Clinical trials are most frequently undertaken in biomedical or health research, although  
4744 research that evaluates interventions, usually by comparing two or more approaches, is also  
4745 conducted in related disciplines, such as psychology. Clinical trials commonly involve  
4746 testing new drugs or testing established drugs for new indications. For this reason, and for  
4747 convenience, references in this chapter are made primarily to drug testing. The guidance  
4748 provided in this chapter also applies, as appropriate, to trials involving other therapies or  
4749 interventions.

4750 Clinical trials take many forms, ranging from “n of 1” studies to multi-centre randomized  
4751 controlled trials. Although the various types and forms of clinical trials have  
4752 methodological differences, the ethical principles and procedures articulated in this Policy  
4753 apply to and can be adapted for each of them. The primary focus of the chapter is on  
4754 randomized controlled trials.

4755 In addition to this Policy, national regulations and international guidelines provide  
4756 direction on ethical principles and regulatory requirements for conducting clinical trials.  
4757 For example, researchers undertaking clinical trials intended for use in seeking regulatory  
4758 marketing approval in Canada must comply with Health Canada regulations.<sup>2</sup> Researchers,  
4759 specifically undertaking clinical trials pertaining to investigation in respect of a drug,  
4760 should also respect the International Conference on Harmonization Good Clinical Practice  
4761 Guidelines (ICH-GCP),<sup>3</sup> which have been adopted by Health Canada, and other applicable  
4762 policy or guidance documents. At the international level, the Declaration of Helsinki  
4763 provides guidance for physicians conducting research.<sup>4</sup> The European Convention on  
4764 Human Rights and Biomedicine<sup>5</sup> and The Council for International Organizations of  
4765 Medical Sciences’ International Ethical Guidelines for Biomedical Research Involving  
4766 Human Subjects<sup>6</sup> provide general guidance on medical research on humans. These  
4767 international guidelines have similar substantive aims but may employ different  
4768 mechanisms for achieving such aims.

4769 Clinical trials may draw participants from a variety of geographically diverse places. Data  
4770 collected from all of the trial sites are pooled for analysis. Issues relating to such multi-site  
4771 clinical trials are discussed in Chapter 8.

4772 This chapter provides guidance on the ethical issues that are relevant specifically to clinical  
4773 trial research. Clinical trial research is also subject to the general guidelines that are  
4774 applicable to research involving humans. These guidelines are set out and discussed in  
4775 Chapters 3 through 7.

## 4776 **B. Assessing Safety and Minimizing Risk**

4777 Participants enrolled in clinical trials are commonly exposed to experimental therapies,  
4778 interventions, drugs or devices, each of which carries specific risks.

4779 **Article 11.1** Research ethics boards (REBs) should ensure that the risk to participants  
4780 from drugs and other interventions in clinical trials is: (a) justified by the  
4781 potential benefits to be gained; and (b) appropriately minimized.

4782 **Application** The approach of proportionate review (see Chapter 2) dictates that studies  
4783 deemed to be of greater risk should be subject to proportionately greater  
4784 scrutiny. In all clinical trial research, the REB should carefully evaluate  
4785 previous laboratory, animal and human research with the drug or other  
4786 therapy, and/or have an expert evaluation undertaken on its behalf, to ensure  
4787 that the risk from its use is: (a) justified by the potential benefits to be  
4788 gained; and (b) appropriately minimized.

4789 Where appropriate, based on reports of safety issues arising in the study, an  
4790 REB may discontinue the study at its institution, require the disclosure of  
4791 relevant safety information to existing and future participants (see Section D  
4792 below), or take other steps reasonably necessary to promote the safety of  
4793 participants.

## 4794 **Monitoring Safety and Reporting Adverse Events**

4795 A key responsibility of researchers and REBs is to ensure that, as a clinical trial proceeds,  
4796 the risks to participants remain in the acceptable range and the safety of participants is  
4797 monitored. It is the basis of the requirement for the reporting of serious adverse events or  
4798 serious adverse drug reactions.

4799 The following definitions are drawn from the ICH-GCP, which has been adopted by Health  
4800 Canada:

- 4801     ▪ Adverse event – “ ... any unfavourable and unintended sign ... symptom, or  
4802     disease temporally associated with the use of a medicinal ... product, whether or  
4803     not related to the medicinal ... product ... ”<sup>7</sup>
- 4804     ▪ Serious adverse event/serious adverse drug reaction – “any untoward medical  
4805     occurrence that at any dose results in death, is life-threatening, requires inpatient  
4806     hospitalization or prolongation of existing hospitalization, results in persistent or  
4807     significant disability/incapacity, or is a congenital anomaly/birth defect.”<sup>8</sup>

4808 Principal investigators must comply with Health Canada’s reporting requirements. These  
4809 include the need to immediately report any safety problems and all serious adverse events  
4810 to the sponsor and participants, as well as the need to report unexpected serious adverse  
4811 events to the regulatory authorities and REBs. Sponsors also have responsibilities to  
4812 expeditiously report all unexpected serious adverse events suffered by participants at any  
4813 site to the regulatory body, the researchers and REBs at all institutions taking part in the  
4814 research.

## 4815 **Assessing Research-Attributable Risk**

4816 **Article 11.2** In clinical trials, an REB may approve a study that involves high-risk  
4817 therapies if the research-attributable risk is no greater, or only minimally  
4818 greater, than that to which patient-participants would routinely be exposed  
4819 in their usual clinical care. Full REB review is the default level of review  
4820 unless it is determined that delegated review may be appropriate.

4821 **Application** As part of their ongoing medical care, patients with serious medical  
4822 conditions are often treated with therapies or undergo interventions or  
4823 procedures having significant risks. These patients are sometimes invited to  
4824 participate in clinical trials. Some kinds of standard or recognized  
4825 treatments themselves pose significant risks (e.g. surgery, chemotherapy or  
4826 radiation therapy). An REB may approve a study that involves high-risk  
4827 therapies if there are no other reasonable alternative therapies available to  
4828 patient-participants and if the research-attributable risk is no greater, or only  
4829 minimally greater, than that to which patient-participants would routinely be  
4830 exposed. (See Chapter 2 Section B). Such risks may be regarded as within  
4831 the range of minimal risk for these patient-participants, since they are  
4832 inherent in the treatment that patients undergo as a part of their everyday  
4833 life.

4834 Eligible participants for such studies are those patients:

- 4835     ▪ who are routinely exposed to similarly high-risk treatments in the course  
4836     of their usual care and for whom there is a favourable balance of risk to  
4837     potential benefits;
- 4838     ▪ for whom there are no other reasonable treatment options available and  
4839     for whom there is a favourable balance of risk to potential benefits; or
- 4840     ▪ for whom the incremental risk of research interventions (the research-  
4841     attributable risk) is minimal.

4842 Because these populations are often vulnerable as a result of being exposed  
4843 to relatively high levels of risks, full REB review is often warranted. REBs  
4844 should assess these trials to determine if they are appropriate for delegated  
4845 review.

4846 Informed consent to such studies must include a description of the risks  
4847 involved as well as a description of any available alternative treatments –

4848 including no treatment. REBs should also seek to ensure that participants  
4849 are informed of the risks and potential benefits attributable to research, as  
4850 distinct from those arising from indicated therapy. (See Chapter 2, Article  
4851 2.9 dealing with a proportionate approach to REB review).

4852 **Article 11.3** Researchers shall provide the REB with an acceptable plan for monitoring  
4853 the safety of trial participants, including a plan for the tabulation, analysis  
4854 and reporting of safety data in a form that permits REBs to interpret and act  
4855 upon the data.<sup>9</sup>

4856 **Application** REBs must ensure that every clinical trial protocol includes a plan to assess  
4857 safety concerns and protect the ongoing safety of research participants. Such  
4858 a plan should include the requirement that researchers, sponsors and/or Data  
4859 Safety and Monitoring Boards (DSMBs), provide REBs with clear and up-  
4860 to-date information about the safety of participants taking part in clinical  
4861 trials. Such reports should be provided promptly and include information  
4862 about the context and significance of reported data to permit a fair  
4863 interpretation and meaningful review by the REB for the protection of trial  
4864 participants. Where possible, REBs should be provided with individual  
4865 serious adverse event reports, accompanied by an evaluation, by the  
4866 sponsor, of their relevance and significance to the trial and its participants.

4867 A safety monitoring plan should include a mechanism by which participants  
4868 may be withdrawn for safety reasons and by which studies may be stopped  
4869 or amended if they are found to be unsafe, or for reasons of futility or  
4870 efficacy. For some trials, the researcher may be expected to perform this  
4871 monitoring function. Depending on the circumstances of the trial, safety  
4872 reports may be submitted on an annual or semi-annual basis, supplemented  
4873 by prompt notices of serious safety threats to participants requiring urgent  
4874 consideration. All information supplied to the REB should include an  
4875 analysis of its significance and sufficient context to permit meaningful  
4876 determinations to be made by the REB.

### 4877 **Data Safety and Monitoring Boards**

4878 A DSMB or Data Safety Committee (DSC) is a multi-disciplinary, independent expert  
4879 advisory group that is responsible for safeguarding the interests of participants in  
4880 randomized controlled trials, assessing the safety and efficacy of study procedures and  
4881 monitoring the overall conduct of a study. It is composed of scientists with expertise in the  
4882 clinical area, statisticians, pharmacists and individuals with expertise in ethics. Where the  
4883 size and complexity of the trial support the establishment of a DSMB, it plays an important  
4884 role in ensuring the safety of study participants, although its responsibilities differ from  
4885 those of an REB.

4886 These responsibilities include:

- 4887     ▪ ensuring the overall safety of participants based on a review of the totality of  
4888     evidence and the principle of the emergence of evidence that is likely to influence  
4889     clinical practice;

4890       ▪ advising the principal investigator and steering committees about the conduct of the  
4891       trial and the integrity of the data, so as to protect the validity and scientific  
4892       credibility of the trial;

4893       ▪ developing and operating under a DSMB Charter governing the activities of the  
4894       DSMB.

4895       Although the DSMB reports its findings and recommendations to the principal  
4896       investigator, it should act independently of the sponsor and of the investigator. The DSMB  
4897       has intermittent access to the accumulated unblinded trial data, and it also audits unblinded  
4898       safety reports from all sites taking part in the trial. Based on that information, and in  
4899       accordance with its trial-specific stopping rules, the DSMB can recommend that the study  
4900       be stopped early for reasons of safety, efficacy or futility. The DSMB will also be  
4901       responsible for making appropriate recommendations about informing participants of  
4902       safety concerns. The DSMB can also recommend that the principal investigator change the  
4903       procedures, methods or consent form information to ensure the safety of participants and  
4904       the validity and reliability of the data being collected.

4905       **Article 11.4** REBs shall develop procedures to review safety reports and to take  
4906       appropriate steps in response.

4907       **Application** For more complex trials, an external DSMB may be appointed to provide a  
4908       more comprehensive mechanism to monitor and address trial safety. Should  
4909       the REB desire copies of DSMB reports and recommendations, they should  
4910       liaise with the principal investigator or steering committee. A DSMB must  
4911       be independent of the trial and its members free of conflicts of interests with  
4912       the study therapy, the trial sponsor, and the outcome of the research. Even  
4913       when there is a DSMB, the sponsor still has a responsibility to provide  
4914       reports of serious adverse events directly to the REB, upon which the REB  
4915       may be obliged to act urgently. The existence of a DSMB does not mitigate  
4916       the responsibilities of the sponsor, investigator or REB to monitor and  
4917       address trial safety.

4918       **Article 11.5** Investigators shall inform participants, immediately, of serious adverse  
4919       events as they pertain to the participant’s health and/or willingness to  
4920       continue to participate in the trial. They should also report these events to  
4921       the REB.

4922       **Application** For the purposes of this Policy, adverse event includes adverse drug  
4923       reactions.<sup>10</sup>

4924       Investigators in multi-site trials should be encouraged to inform other site  
4925       investigators of serious adverse events. Where a sponsor has discontinued or  
4926       unblinded a clinical trial or a part of a clinical trial, the investigator has  
4927       regulatory responsibility to inform both clinical trial participants and the  
4928       REB of the discontinuance or unblinding and the reasons for it, and also to  
4929       advise them in writing of any risks to the health of participants.

4930 Investigators should feel free to use their discretion in communicating other  
4931 adverse events to participants as they think beneficial. Adverse events  
4932 should be communicated to individual participants based on the extent to  
4933 which the adverse event may be relevant to the participant’s health, safety  
4934 and ongoing consent. REBs should encourage communication of adverse  
4935 events among site investigators.

4936 Reports on adverse events should provide the necessary detail for REBs to  
4937 contextualize the report and understand the impact of the adverse event on  
4938 the health and safety of participants.

### 4939 **C. Phases of Clinical Trials**

4940 This section discusses the ethical issues pertaining to the different phases of clinical trials,  
4941 primarily those involving drugs. The guidance provided in this section may also apply, as  
4942 appropriate, to trials involving other therapies or interventions. Clinical trials involving  
4943 pharmaceutical products are commonly categorized into four phases, each of which gives  
4944 rise to particular ethical issues.<sup>11</sup> In all phases of such clinical trial research, REBs should  
4945 be aware of ethical issues including but not limited to safety, selection and recruitment of  
4946 participants, undue inducement, consent, and real, potential or perceived conflicts of  
4947 interests.

4948 **Article 11.6** When reviewing a clinical trial protocol, the REB should be aware of its  
4949 phase and the special ethical issues that different phases of research may  
4950 raise.

4951 **Application** Some ethical issues are most likely to arise in a specific phase or phases of a  
4952 clinical trial. Other issues may arise at any phase of a clinical trial.

4953 **Phase I** In Phase I clinical trials, researchers test a new drug or treatment in a small  
4954 group of people, often for the first time, to evaluate its toxicity and other  
4955 side effects, and to determine a safe dosing range. Participants in Phase I  
4956 clinical trials are usually healthy volunteers or patients who have failed  
4957 conventional therapy. Pharmacokinetic studies (the study of the absorption,  
4958 distribution, metabolism, and elimination of a drug or ingested compound)  
4959 are one example of Phase I clinical trials.

4960 **Ethical Concerns** – Safety concerns are particularly acute in Phase I  
4961 research because it may be the first time human participants are exposed to  
4962 the new drug (“first-in-human” trials), and there may be little or no  
4963 experience with the drug. Phase I trials often depend on healthy participants  
4964 who are offered incentives for their participation, though this is not usually  
4965 the case in, for example, cancer trials. The combination of clinical risk with  
4966 uncertain or no likelihood of clinical benefit, and the often substantial  
4967 incentives offered to participants, raises ethical concerns about safety, the  
4968 selection and recruitment of participants, and the consent process. For  
4969 safety, it is important to ensure that the drug is initially given to a small  
4970 number of participants and that dosing is increased in clearly defined  
4971 increments only after participants’ responses to the initial dose is known.  
4972 Recruitment and consent procedures should ensure that participants are

- 4973 aware of the untested nature of the therapy and that participants do not  
4974 accept, because of the incentives being offered, risks they would otherwise  
4975 refuse.
- 4976 Although there are clear benefits to conducting Phase I trials on healthy  
4977 volunteers, Phase I clinical trials now increasingly include participants with  
4978 specific diseases for whom conventional therapies have failed. Such studies  
4979 may be designated as Phase I clinical trials, but the boundaries between trial  
4980 phases are not always clear. Such studies may be designated as combined  
4981 Phase I/II or pure Phase II clinical trials (see below).
- 4982 Phase II Phase II clinical trials primarily examine the safety (e.g. short-term side  
4983 effects) and efficacy of new drugs. They are conducted in populations with  
4984 the disease or condition sought to be treated by the drug.
- 4985 **Ethical Concerns:** Phase II or combined Phase I/II clinical trials raise  
4986 particular ethical concerns, because they are often conducted with  
4987 populations whose therapeutic options have been exhausted. Patients with  
4988 cancer that is incurable by standard therapies and HIV/AIDS are examples.  
4989 These circumstances may affect the perceptions of patients and their  
4990 families as to the balance between the risks and potential benefits of the  
4991 study and thus may affect their decision whether to participate.  
4992 Additionally, because participants in Phase II trials include patients who are  
4993 often unwell and frequently not working, the REB should ensure incentives  
4994 for participation is not coercive, and patients do not accept risks they would  
4995 otherwise refuse, because of the incentives being offered. Researchers  
4996 should be encouraged to consult with the REB at an early stage about any  
4997 recruiting, consent or safety issues that arise.
- 4998 During the course of a Phase II clinical trial, patients will have access to a  
4999 new drug that may be efficacious (provide clinical benefit). Investigators  
5000 should: a) as part of the consent process, provide details on access to the  
5001 new drug upon trial completion; and b) make reasonable efforts to secure  
5002 continued access to the drug following the Phase II trial, for those patients  
5003 for whom the drugs appear to be efficacious.
- 5004 Phase III The drug or treatment is given to a large group of patients, often at several  
5005 sites. Phase III trials determine the drug or treatments' efficacy by  
5006 comparing it with commonly used treatments, monitoring for side effects  
5007 and collecting additional information to evaluate the overall risk-benefit  
5008 relationship of the drug. This information will help support the safe use of  
5009 the drug or treatment. These studies may lead to a new drug being marketed  
5010 in Canada or to the use of an approved drug for a new indication.
- 5011 **Ethical Concerns:** The REB should carefully examine Phase III clinical  
5012 trials to ensure that the care of patient-participants is not compromised in  
5013 the random assignment to any arm of the study (including the placebo arm).  
5014 The REB should also address the issue of continuing access to the  
5015 experimental therapy after the trial. If the treatment benefits participants and

5016 is safe, will it continue to be provided? If so, for how long and at what cost?  
5017 If not, what provision will be made to ensure that participants continue to  
5018 receive adequate treatment? The REB should be aware that numerous safety  
5019 standards (e.g. mechanical and electrical) apply to medical devices, and the  
5020 REB should be assured that these standards will be met.

5021 Phase IV Phase IV clinical trials, also known as post-regulatory approval studies,  
5022 primarily examine the long-term effectiveness and toxicity of already-  
5023 marketed drugs. They may also be designed to determine the effectiveness  
5024 of the treatment or intervention in different populations, or to look at  
5025 quality-of-life issues.

5026 **Ethical Concerns:** Phase IV studies can be extremely valuable for  
5027 assessing the long-term safety and effectiveness of marketed drugs and  
5028 devices. Earlier-stage studies are of limited duration, and subsequent  
5029 research can identify toxicities and drug interactions that only emerge over  
5030 time. However, in some cases, Phase IV trials may be designed to serve  
5031 primarily as marketing initiatives – to encourage the prescription and  
5032 continued use of an approved drug. For example, a physician may be paid a  
5033 per capita fee by a sponsor to collect data on the side effects and acceptance  
5034 by patients of a drug being marketed by that drug’s sponsor. However, the  
5035 financial terms associated with these trials may create problems such as  
5036 inappropriate prescription practices, billing practices or utilization of public  
5037 resources (e.g. diagnostic services and medical imaging). Researchers and  
5038 REBs must examine Phase IV clinical trials in light of these potential  
5039 conflicts to ensure that trials are undertaken for a bona fide scientific  
5040 purpose, which includes a design and objective(s) that are scientifically,  
5041 rather than commercially, driven. Phase IV trials designed with the primary  
5042 goal of increasing sales, do not constitute legitimate research.

#### 5043 **D. Sharing New Information**

5044 In the course of a clinical trial, new information may arise that is relevant to participants’  
5045 ongoing consent to participate in the research. Section B above addresses the REB’s  
5046 obligation to ensure that the safety of participants is monitored and protected. Section D  
5047 describes the obligations of researchers and REBs to ensure that any new information,  
5048 including information about newly discovered risks and toxicities, changes to the research  
5049 protocol, and information that may affect the participants’ welfare and willingness to enter  
5050 or continue in the trial be promptly disclosed.

5051 **Article 11.7** Researchers shall promptly share information that may be relevant to  
5052 participants’ ongoing consent to participate in the research with the REB,  
5053 the participants, and other appropriate regulatory or advisory bodies.

5054 Researchers should also promptly share new information with former  
5055 participants in the research to the extent that it may be relevant to their  
5056 welfare.

5057 **Application** Article 11.7 outlines a researcher’s continuing duty to share new and



5058 relevant information from the clinical trial.

5059 New information requires disclosure if it may affect the willingness of  
5060 participants to continue in the trial, or is otherwise relevant to participants’  
5061 welfare or consent. (See Articles 2.8, 3.3, 3.4, and 6.15). To understand its  
5062 particular relevance, the information should be considered from the  
5063 perspective of the participant. New information that arises outside the trial  
5064 (e.g. new findings in other related research), should also be disclosed when  
5065 that information is relevant to the participant’s ongoing consent to  
5066 participation. New information thus covers a range of matters that includes,  
5067 but is not limited to, the following:

- 5068       ▪ changes to the research protocol;
- 5069       ▪ evidence of new risks, determined to be serious enough to warrant  
5070 disclosure;
- 5071       ▪ new information that decisively shows that the benefits of one  
5072 intervention exceed those of another;
- 5073       ▪ new research findings, including relevant non-trial findings; or
- 5074       ▪ unanticipated problems involving lack of efficacy, recruitment issues, or  
5075 other matters determined to be serious enough to warrant disclosure.

5076 Researchers must promptly share new information with the REB and trial  
5077 participants. What constitutes prompt disclosure may be set out in  
5078 regulatory documents, such as Health Canada’s *Food and Drug Act* and  
5079 Regulations, or in the absence of regulatory requirements, the REB may  
5080 provide guidance. If sponsors fail to report new and significant information  
5081 that is relevant to the welfare of participants, then researchers and/or REBs  
5082 have a duty to do so. The more relevant, serious and urgent the information,  
5083 the more promptly it should be disclosed. Researchers should also promptly  
5084 share new information with other physicians administering the treatment  
5085 and the scientific community to the extent that it may be relevant to the  
5086 general public’s welfare.

5087 The duty to report such new information to the REB, along with the  
5088 necessary analysis and evaluation to make the new information  
5089 interpretable, lies with the researcher and the sponsor. The REB should  
5090 encourage researchers to raise potentially relevant developments with the  
5091 REB at an early stage to better determine the appropriate scope and timing  
5092 of information-sharing with participants and regulatory authorities.

5093 Significant information affecting the welfare of former participants may  
5094 arise after the completion of the trial or after the participants’ involvement  
5095 is finished. If so, the researcher should share the information with the REB  
5096 and other appropriate regulatory or advisory bodies. The REB and  
5097 researcher should consider whether, given its nature and urgency, the

5098 information would be relevant to any former participants' welfare and  
5099 informed choices, as well as to the ongoing research elsewhere and the  
5100 general public. If so, reasonable steps should be taken to inform such  
5101 participants, and publicly disclose the information, in a meaningful and  
5102 timely manner.

## 5103 **E. Therapeutic Misconception**

5104 Although clinical trials may provide benefits to some participants, the purpose of a clinical  
5105 trial is to evaluate an experimental therapy or intervention, not to provide therapy.  
5106 Therapeutic misconception refers to the tendency of trial participants to believe that the  
5107 primary intention of research tests and interventions is to provide a therapeutic benefit to  
5108 the patient-participant. With the exception of some Phase I studies, clinical trials usually  
5109 involve individuals in need of treatment, for whom the experimental therapy is hoped to be  
5110 effective. Even when research risks, potential benefits and alternatives are explained to  
5111 them, it is common that trial patient-participants do not fully appreciate the differences  
5112 between clinical care and research participation. As a result, some patient-participants may  
5113 assume that there must be therapeutic value in the research procedures they are  
5114 undergoing, or that they have been invited to participate because their physician believes it  
5115 would contribute to their health. This may be particularly true when the researcher is the  
5116 patient-participant's own physician or care provider. Often the patient's physician, or  
5117 someone associated with the patient's physician, makes the initial approach or provides  
5118 preliminary information about trial participation. Research has shown that participants may  
5119 confuse the purposes of research and therapy.

5120 **Article 11.8** REBs and clinical trial researchers should be conscious of the phenomenon  
5121 of therapeutic misconception and ensure that procedures for recruitment and  
5122 informed consent emphasize which specific elements of a clinical study are  
5123 required for research purposes, as well as the differences between research  
5124 and the standard clinical care they might otherwise receive.

5125 **Application** Article 3.2 describes the requirements for informed consent to research  
5126 participation. It indicates that participants shall be provided with relevant  
5127 information, including a clear description of those elements of participation  
5128 that are experimental in nature and those not primarily intended to benefit  
5129 the participant directly. When a treating clinician conducts research on his  
5130 or her patients, special efforts may be required, as part of the consent  
5131 process, to distinguish between these two roles – clinician and researcher –  
5132 and to ensure that patient-participants understand the research elements of  
5133 the study. While the physician is ultimately responsible for patient care and  
5134 safeguarding the patient's health, patient-participants should understand that  
5135 a physician who conducts research is acting in a capacity that is outside the  
5136 traditional physician-patient relationship.

5137 One way to minimize therapeutic misconception is to ensure that the health  
5138 care professionals who provide the patient's regular care are involved as  
5139 little as possible in recruitment and the consent process, to ensure that  
5140 clearly different people perform treatment and research functions.

5141 **Clinician-Researchers and Therapeutic Misconception**

5142 “Clinician” is defined as any health care provider. Research has shown that clinician-  
5143 researchers may conflate research and clinical practice. Some clinicians may be  
5144 unrealistically optimistic about an experimental intervention’s prospects. Clinicians may  
5145 overstate the potential benefits and understate the risks of participation in a clinical trial  
5146 when speaking with potential participants. Clinicians who conflate research and individual  
5147 therapy may foster therapeutic misconception among patient-participants that may  
5148 influence recruiting and the consent process. (See Chapter 3). They should take care not to  
5149 create unrealistic expectations among participants with respect to the potential benefits of  
5150 the research.

5151 **F. Financial Conflicts of Interests**

5152 Real, potential or perceived financial conflicts of interests are a feature of some clinical  
5153 trials. Clinical trials may also be subject to other forms of conflict of interests. (See  
5154 Chapter 7).

5155 **Industry-Sponsored Research**

5156 **Article 11.9** REBs should be aware of and consider the possibility of financial conflicts  
5157 of interests. They should ensure that clinical trial research is designed to  
5158 meet appropriate standards of participant safety and respectful treatment,  
5159 and that financial considerations do not affect these standards or the  
5160 scientific validity and transparency of study procedures.

5161 **Application** Researchers should not benefit financially from pharmaceutical or  
5162 biotechnology companies. Financial incentives have the potential to distort  
5163 researchers’ judgment in ensuring the design and conduct of the trial is  
5164 ethical. Clinical trials are commonly undertaken under contract with  
5165 pharmaceutical or biotechnology companies in order to secure marketing  
5166 approval for the drug, device or product being tested. These companies  
5167 operate on a profit-based model. The financial benefits of demonstrating  
5168 efficacy and safety in a novel therapy may have the effect of compromising  
5169 standards of human protection and scientific validity. (See Chapter 7).  
5170 Financial conflicts of interests are not a feature of all industry-sponsored  
5171 research. However, REBs shall consider the potential for conflicts of  
5172 interests in clinical trials because it has been empirically established as a  
5173 feature of some industry sponsored research and can undermine the ethical  
5174 conduct of research.

5175 **Clinical Trial Budgets**

5176 Budgets for clinical trials are usually calculated based on per capita costs – that is, the  
5177 sponsor pays the researcher a fixed sum for each research participant, based on the duration  
5178 and complexity of the study and the tests and procedures it requires.

5179 **Article 11.10** REBs shall ensure that clinical trial budgets are reviewed to ensure that  
5180 conflicts of interests are identified and appropriately managed.

5181 **Application** REBs may delegate the review of clinical trial budgets to an appropriate  
5182 institutional body. The body should ensure financial conflicts of interests  
5183 are reported to the REB. When no such institutional body exists, the REBs  
5184 should review clinical trial budgets for financial conflicts of interests. As a  
5185 general guide, payments for clinical trial procedures should be no greater  
5186 than the usual amounts charged by health care providers for the provision of  
5187 comparable services. Researchers should disclose all kinds and amounts of  
5188 payment to the REB. Budgets should also be examined to ensure that no  
5189 inappropriate payments are to be made, such as incentives for identifying  
5190 and recruiting participants or other unexplained expenses that may raise  
5191 questions about conflict of interests. Further, payment provisions should be  
5192 scrutinized to ensure they do not create ethically inappropriate incentives to  
5193 recruit quickly, at the expense of a careful review of the suitability of  
5194 potential participants. Differential incentives paid for different levels of  
5195 recruitment, such as higher per-participant payments for those recruited  
5196 above a set target, may also encourage inappropriate recruitment practices  
5197 and should be prohibited. Unreasonable payments or undue inducements  
5198 may place the researcher, and sometimes the institution, in a conflict  
5199 between maximizing financial remuneration on the one hand and protecting  
5200 participants and meeting the scientific requirements of the study on the  
5201 other. Disclosure of the kinds and amounts of payments and other budgetary  
5202 details assists the REB to assess potential conflicts of interests and  
5203 encourages the researcher to identify and manage them appropriately.  
5204 Management by institutions and/or REBs may include prohibiting certain  
5205 forms of payment.

## 5206 **G. Placebo-Controlled Studies**

5207 With respect to establishing the efficacy of a new drug, the most compelling trial design is  
5208 considered to be a Randomized Controlled Trial (RCT). There are many possible variations  
5209 and choices of control groups for RCTs, including but not limited to active control, placebo  
5210 control, dose-response, multiple arms and combination therapies. It is the responsibility of  
5211 the trial sponsor to provide justification for the choice of control group. The International  
5212 Conference on Harmonization: E-10 Choice of Control Group and Related Issues in  
5213 Clinical Trials (ICH E10)<sup>12</sup> guidance outlines the issues that must be considered when  
5214 designing an RCT, as well as the implications of various design choices. Where there is an  
5215 established effective treatment, use of a placebo may deprive participants of needed  
5216 therapy. The following article is designed to ensure that placebo controls are used only in  
5217 situations that do not compromise the safety and welfare of participants.

### 5218 **Clinical Equipoise**

5219 Clinical equipoise means a genuine uncertainty on the part of the relevant expert  
5220 community about the comparative therapeutic merits of each arm of a clinical trial. The  
5221 tenet of clinical equipoise provides a clear moral foundation to the requirement that the  
5222 health care of individuals not be disadvantaged by their participation in research.

5223 **Article 11.11** (a) A new therapy or intervention should generally be tested against an  
5224 established effective therapy.

5225 (b) As with all alternative choices of a control, a placebo control is ethically  
5226 acceptable in a randomized controlled clinical trial only if:

5227       ▪ its use is scientifically and methodologically sound to establish the  
5228 efficacy or safety of the test therapy or intervention; and

5229       ▪ it does not compromise the safety or health of participants; and

5230       ▪ the researcher articulates to the REB a valid scientific justification  
5231 for the use of the placebo control.

5232 (c) For clinical trials involving a placebo control, the researcher and the  
5233 REB shall ensure the general principles of informed consent are  
5234 respected (see Article 3.2 ) and that participants or their authorized third  
5235 parties are specifically informed:

5236       ▪ about any therapy that will be withdrawn or withheld for purposes of  
5237 the research; and

5238       ▪ of the anticipated consequences of withdrawing or withholding the  
5239 therapy.

5240 **Application** All clinical trials involve risk to participants. For all approved trials: a) the  
5241 welfare of the participants need to be upheld under the specific conditions  
5242 of the trial; and b) the trial needs to be scientifically sound. Risks to the  
5243 safety of participants can come from lack of efficacy or from undesirable  
5244 side effects. These risks must be assessed for each treatment arm, including  
5245 the experimental and control arm(s). The choice of control arm, which may  
5246 range from currently approved treatments to placebo, placebo add-on or no  
5247 treatment, should, like all research, meet an acceptable risk-benefit ratio. As  
5248 with other aspects of the trial design, the choice of control arm should be  
5249 justified based on scientific, medical and methodological reasons.

5250 According to Article 11.11, one should consider a proven effective therapy  
5251 as control if one is available. A superiority trial with an active control is a  
5252 straight forward and uncomplicated design. However, superiority against an  
5253 active control may not always be a realistic expectation in a test therapy. A  
5254 non-inferiority trial on the other hand is not as straight forward. There are  
5255 many methodological requirements that need to be considered in the design  
5256 of a non-inferiority trial. As a result, a non-inferiority trial may not be  
5257 feasible or interpretable in some therapeutic areas for the management of  
5258 certain conditions. Sponsors, researchers, and REBs should refer to ICH E-  
5259 10 and be familiar with concepts such as assay sensitivity, historical  
5260 evidence of sensitivity to drug effects, and choosing the non-inferiority  
5261 margin. The implications of various choices of trial design directly affect  
5262 the interpretability of trial results, and a trial that cannot return useful  
5263 information is by definition not ethical. Good science is a necessary albeit  
5264 insufficient condition for good ethics. To properly assess the ethics of  
5265 placebo vs. active controlled non-inferiority trials, an appreciation of the

- 5266 interplay of ethics and science is required. Conditions that work against  
5267 carrying out a non-inferiority trial successfully include low and/or variable  
5268 response to treatment, and high placebo response.
- 5269 Participants in the test arm of a trial of a new therapy are not receiving  
5270 proven effective therapy. Risks to the safety of participants can come from  
5271 lack of efficacy or from undesirable side effects. These risks should be  
5272 assessed for each treatment arm, including the experimental and control  
5273 arm(s).
- 5274 The use of an active treatment comparator in a clinical trial of a new therapy  
5275 is generally the appropriate study design when an established effective  
5276 therapy exists for the population and clinical indication under study.
- 5277 Great care should be taken to avoid abuse of placebo comparators.  
5278 However, they are acceptable in any of the following situations:
- 5279 1. there are no established effective therapies for the population or for the  
5280 indication under study;
  - 5281 2. existing evidence raises substantial doubt within the community of  
5282 treating physicians regarding the net therapeutic benefit of available  
5283 therapies;
  - 5284 3. patients are resistant to the available therapies by virtue of their past  
5285 treatment history or known medical history;
  - 5286 4. the study involves adding a new investigational therapy to established  
5287 effective therapies: established effective therapy plus new therapy vs.  
5288 established effective therapy plus placebo;
  - 5289 5. patients have provided an informed refusal of established effective  
5290 therapy, and withholding such therapy will not cause serious or  
5291 irreversible harm.
- 5292 The determination of response satisfaction and refusal of treatment must take place outside  
5293 the context of recruitment for the clinical trial and prior to offering trial participation to the  
5294 potential participant, and both must be documented.<sup>13</sup>
- 5295 The use of a placebo comparator in situation (5) is permitted because potential trial  
5296 participants are not using established therapies and therefore are not benefiting from  
5297 therapy. For that reason such participants would not be further disadvantaged if enrolled in  
5298 a placebo controlled trial than participants in a trial for whom there is no established  
5299 effective therapies for the indication under study. Research protocols submitted to REBs  
5300 should include sufficient support and justification of the study design and use of placebo  
5301 comparator.
- 5302 The following scenarios, while not exhaustive, may be used as guide for assessing the  
5303 ethics and choice of trial designs:

5304 Scenario 1

- 5305 ▪ no proven effective therapy available;
- 5306 ▪ efficacy can be established with a placebo controlled superiority trial.

5307 Scenario 2

- 5308 ▪ available treatment highly and consistently effective;
- 5309 ▪ efficacy can be established with an active controlled non-inferiority trial;
- 5310 ▪ consider adding a placebo arm if acceptable ethical conditions are met.

5311 Scenario 3

- 5312 ▪ available treatment modest and inconsistent;
- 5313 ▪ new treatment expected to be more effective than available treatment;
- 5314 ▪ efficacy can be established with an active controlled superiority trial;
- 5315 ▪ consider adding a placebo arm if acceptable ethical conditions are met.

5316 Scenario 4

- 5317 ▪ available treatment modest and inconsistent;
- 5318 ▪ new treatment expected to be more effective than available treatment;
- 5319 ▪ relatively high placebo response;
- 5320 ▪ a case for placebo controlled superiority trial to establish efficacy;
- 5321 ▪ acceptable ethical conditions must be met or perform an active controlled superiority
- 5322 trial.

5323 Scenario 5

- 5324 ▪ available treatment is modest and inconsistent;
- 5325 ▪ new treatment is not expected to be more effective than available treatment;
- 5326 ▪ strong case for placebo controlled superiority trial to establish efficacy;
- 5327 ▪ acceptable ethical conditions must be met or perform an active controlled superiority
- 5328 trial.

5329 **H. Analysis and Dissemination of the Data and Results of**  
5330 **Clinical Trials**

5331 The rights of sponsors with respect to the ownership, analysis, interpretation and  
5332 publication of study data are typically described in industry-researcher contracts (often  
5333 referred to as clinical trial agreements or clinical study agreements), which may not always  
5334 be available for REB review. These contracts may also place restrictions on the publication  
5335 of findings, either directly or through provisions that seek to protect, in favour of the  
5336 sponsor, the intellectual property of study procedures, data or other information.

5337 **Article 11.12** With respect to research findings:

- 5338 (a) Institutions and REBs should take reasonable measures to ensure that
- 5339 sponsors, researchers and institutions share clinical trial research results
- 5340 and publish or otherwise disseminate the analysis and interpretation of
- 5341 clinical trial research findings in a timely manner without undue
- 5342 restriction.

5343 (b) Any prohibition or undue limitation on the publication or dissemination  
5344 of scientific findings from clinical trials is ethically unacceptable.

5345 (c) Institutions should develop reasonable written policies regarding  
5346 acceptable and unacceptable clauses in clinical trial research contracts  
5347 relating to confidentiality, publication and access to data.

5348 **Application** To justify the involvement of human participants, and the risks and other  
5349 burdens they are asked to bear, research must be valuable. That is, it must  
5350 have a reasonable likelihood of promoting social good. If research findings  
5351 are not disseminated within a reasonable time, their value may be  
5352 diminished or lost, betraying the contributions and sacrifices of participants.  
5353 For this reason, and based on respect for participant expectations and  
5354 protection of the public good, researchers and institutions have an ethical  
5355 responsibility to make reasonable efforts to publicly disseminate the results  
5356 of clinical research in a timely manner.

5357 However, negative results of research are not always published or otherwise  
5358 disseminated. Failing to publish such results could lead to publication bias  
5359 and thus contribute to a series of risks, including misinformed clinical  
5360 decision-making based on incomplete or skewed data, inappropriate and  
5361 potentially harmful clinical practices and injury to health, needless and  
5362 wasteful duplication of research with associated risks to participants, and  
5363 fraud or deception in the clinical trials process and erosion of public trust  
5364 and accountability in research.

5365 Although it is beyond the scope of the Policy to provide guidance for  
5366 journal editors and publishers, both have ethical obligations with regard to  
5367 the publication of the results of research. Both negative and positive results  
5368 should be published. Sources of funding, institutional affiliations and  
5369 conflicts of interests should be declared in publications.

5370 REBs should require the satisfactory amendment or removal of any  
5371 confidentiality clauses or publication restrictions that unduly limit either the  
5372 content of the scientific information that may be disseminated, or the timing  
5373 of dissemination. Contracts should also ensure, as far as reasonably  
5374 possible, that principal investigators have the necessary access to original  
5375 trial data, and the opportunity to analyze them, to ensure that they can report  
5376 study findings fairly and accurately, particularly with respect to both  
5377 efficacy and safety. When access to original trial data is not possible, the  
5378 sponsor should provide the REB with the reason for restricting access to  
5379 trial data.

5380 Institutional and REB policies should ensure that sponsors' legitimate  
5381 interests are reasonably balanced against the researcher's ethical and legal  
5382 obligations to participants, and to the scientific and public good to  
5383 disseminate data and research findings.



5384 Such policies should require that clinical trial research contracts be  
5385 examined to ensure that contractual provisions comply with institutional  
5386 policy standards. They should do all of the following:

5387 1) require that confidentiality and publication clauses be submitted to a  
5388 responsible authority (e.g. the REB or research administration) for a  
5389 determination of their consistency with the policy;

5390 2) require that any ethical concerns arising in the review be referred to the  
5391 REB as an integral part of the ethics review process;

5392 3) provide that any proposed restrictions on publication should include an  
5393 ethically acceptable justification;

5394 4) provide that all confidentiality and publication clauses:

5395 (a) are consistent with the researcher's duty to share new information  
5396 from clinical trials with REBs and trial participants in a timely  
5397 manner (Section D, above);

5398 (b) are reasonable in terms of any limitations or restrictions on the  
5399 publication or other dissemination or communication of  
5400 information; and

5401 (c) permit researchers to access all study data.

5402 Review of ethical aspects of researcher–industry contracts should be  
5403 undertaken by a duly composed REB, or by or under the auspices of another  
5404 competent institutional authority as an integral part of the ethics review  
5405 process. If done under the latter process, the review of contracts should be  
5406 conducted in a manner that: (1) conforms to the special ethical duties,  
5407 mandate and purposes of REB review; and (2) consults with the REB when  
5408 necessary.

5409 In the review process, the onus to justify restrictions on dissemination or  
5410 access to data should lie with the one seeking such restriction, usually the  
5411 researcher or sponsor. The reasonableness of restrictions on either the  
5412 content or timing of dissemination should be measured against the written  
5413 institutional policies. For example, some existing institutional policies deem  
5414 unacceptable any publication restrictions that exceed a time limit of three to  
5415 six months after the close of the trial. Such policies should also address  
5416 restrictions on the dissemination of particular kinds of information, such as  
5417 information that may be considered proprietary or trade secrets. Restrictions  
5418 on information that participants would reasonably consider relevant to their  
5419 welfare (see Article 11.7), or that are required to give appropriate context to  
5420 a manuscript or other publication, are seldom if ever justified.

5421 **Clinical Trial Registration**

5422 Clinical trial registries permit web-based access to information about ongoing clinical trials  
5423 so that anyone may have information about trials and their results.

5424 **Article 11.13** All clinical trials within the scope of this Policy shall be registered with a  
5425 recognized and easily web-accessible public registry.<sup>14</sup>

5426 **Application** Clinical trial registration is the international standard. Registration of all  
5427 clinical trials is strongly encouraged, including trials that are not subject to  
5428 this Policy. Clinical trial registries are one way to help ensure that negative  
5429 trial results are widely available. These, in addition to editorial policies,<sup>15</sup>  
5430 ethical policy reforms, and revised national and institutional ethics policies,  
5431 contribute to a multi-faceted approach to combating non-disclosure,  
5432 publication bias, and the suppression of data in clinical research.

5433 Clinical trials (as defined in Chapter 11 “Overview”) should be registered  
5434 before recruitment of the first trial participant in a registry acknowledged by  
5435 the World Health Organization (WHO) or International Committee of  
5436 Medical Journal Editors (ICMJE). Researchers should provide the REB  
5437 with the number assigned to the trial upon registration.

5438 **Endnotes**

---

<sup>1</sup> This definition is drawn in part from World Health Organization, International Clinical Trials Registry Platform (ICTRP), [www.who.int/ictrp/en](http://www.who.int/ictrp/en)

<sup>2</sup> Part C, Division 5 of the Food and Drug Regulations, [www.laws.justice.gc.ca/eng/C.R.C.-C.870/page-2.html#anchorbo-ga:1\\_C-gb:1\\_5](http://www.laws.justice.gc.ca/eng/C.R.C.-C.870/page-2.html#anchorbo-ga:1_C-gb:1_5) and Medical Devices Regulations (SOR/98-282), [www.laws.justice.gc.ca/eng/SOR-98-282/index.html](http://www.laws.justice.gc.ca/eng/SOR-98-282/index.html)

<sup>3</sup> International Conference on Harmonization, Guidance E6: Good Clinical Practice – Consolidated Guideline (of ICH Technical Requirements for the Registration of Pharmaceuticals for Human Use) 1996, adopted by Health Canada in 1997, [www.hc-sc.gc.ca/dhp-mps/prodpharma/applic-demande/guide-ld/ich/efficac/e6-eng.php](http://www.hc-sc.gc.ca/dhp-mps/prodpharma/applic-demande/guide-ld/ich/efficac/e6-eng.php)

<sup>4</sup> World Medical Association, *Declaration of Helsinki: Ethical Principles for Medical Research Involving Human Subjects*, October 2008, [www.wma.net/en/30publications/10policies/b3/index.html](http://www.wma.net/en/30publications/10policies/b3/index.html)

<sup>5</sup> Council of Europe, *Convention for the Protection of Human Rights and Dignity of the Human Being with regard to the Application of Biology and Medicine: Convention on Human Rights and Biomedicine*, (1997) <http://conventions.coe.int/Treaty/EN/Treaties/Html/164.htm>

<sup>6</sup> The Council for International Organizations of Medical Sciences (CIOMS), *International Ethical Guidelines for Biomedical Research Involving Human Subject*, November 2002, [www.cioms.ch/frame\\_guidelines\\_nov\\_2002.htm](http://www.cioms.ch/frame_guidelines_nov_2002.htm)

<sup>7</sup> See note 3 above, Section 1.2.

<sup>8</sup> See note 3 above, Section 1.50.

<sup>9</sup> The NIH has developed guidance on data and safety monitoring of clinical trials, [www.grants.nih.gov/grants/guide/notice-files/not98-084.html](http://www.grants.nih.gov/grants/guide/notice-files/not98-084.html) and [www.grants.nih.gov/grants/guide/notice-files/not-od-00-038.html](http://www.grants.nih.gov/grants/guide/notice-files/not-od-00-038.html)

<sup>10</sup> Part C, Division 5 of the Food and Drug Regulations, [www.laws.justice.gc.ca/eng/C.R.C.-C.870/page-2.html#anchorbo-ga:l\\_C-gb:l\\_5](http://www.laws.justice.gc.ca/eng/C.R.C.-C.870/page-2.html#anchorbo-ga:l_C-gb:l_5)

<sup>11</sup> The description of the clinical trial phases above has been adapted from the U.S. National Library of Medicine of the National Institutes of Health, “FAQ: What are clinical trial phases?” [www.nlm.nih.gov/services/faqctgov.html](http://www.nlm.nih.gov/services/faqctgov.html)

<sup>12</sup> International Conference on Harmonization, Guidance E10: Choice of Control Group and Related Issues in Clinical Trials, 2000 [www.ich.org/LOB/media/MEDIA486.pdf](http://www.ich.org/LOB/media/MEDIA486.pdf)

<sup>13</sup> These conditions are drawn from the recommendations of the National Placebo Working Committee on the Appropriate Use of Placebos in Clinical Trials in Canada, July 2004. [www.cihr-irsc.gc.ca/e/25139.html](http://www.cihr-irsc.gc.ca/e/25139.html) with minor amendments approved by the CIHR Standing Committee on Ethics.

<sup>14</sup> CIHR requires that randomized clinical trials be registered with an International Standard Randomized Controlled Trial Number (ISRCTN) at [www.controlled-trials.com](http://www.controlled-trials.com) and World Health Organization, International Clinical Trials Registry Platform (ICTRP) at [www.who.int/ictrp/en](http://www.who.int/ictrp/en)

<sup>15</sup> International Committee of Medical Journal Editors, *Sponsorship, Authorship and Accountability*, [www.icmje.org/update\\_sponsor.html](http://www.icmje.org/update_sponsor.html)

---

## References

---

- US Food and Drug Administration, *Food and Drug Administration Amendments Act* (FDAAA) of 2007, September 2007.
- World Medical Association, *Declaration of Helsinki: Ethical Principles of Medical Research Involving Human Subjects*, October 2008, [www.wma.net/en/30publications/10policies/b3/index.html](http://www.wma.net/en/30publications/10policies/b3/index.html)
- Council of Europe, *Convention for the Protection of Human Rights and Dignity of the Human Being with regard to the Application of Biology and Medicine: Convention on Human Rights and Biomedicine*, 1997, <http://conventions.coe.int/Treaty/EN/Treaties/Html/164.htm>

- The Council for International Organizations of Medical Sciences (CIOMS), *International Ethical Guidelines for Biomedical Research Involving Human Subject*, November 2002, [www.cioms.ch/frame\\_guidelines\\_nov\\_2002.htm](http://www.cioms.ch/frame_guidelines_nov_2002.htm)

# Chapter 12

5439

5440  
5441

## HUMAN BIOLOGICAL MATERIALS AND MATERIALS RELATED TO HUMAN REPRODUCTION

5442 The use of materials originating from human bodies for research contributes greatly to the  
5443 advancement of biomedical science. The sources of these materials could be from patients  
5444 following diagnostic or therapeutic procedures, autopsy specimens, donations of organs or  
5445 tissue from living or dead humans, body wastes or abandoned tissue. Biological materials  
5446 may also be sought from individuals for use in a specific research project. Once collected,  
5447 biological materials may be held in biobanks to serve as a research resource for many years.

5448 Ethical considerations raised by such research centre on acceptable access to and use of  
5449 biological materials, potential privacy concerns arising from the handling of information  
5450 derived from such materials, and the special status some individuals and groups accord to  
5451 the human body and its parts. Because the significance of biological materials varies among  
5452 individuals and groups, it is important to assess the ethics of research involving such  
5453 materials with an awareness of, and sensitivity to, known values, beliefs and attitudes of  
5454 those from whom materials originated.

5455 Sections A to D of this chapter provide guidance on research involving human biological  
5456 materials. Human biological materials include tissues, organs, blood, plasma, skin, serum,  
5457 DNA, RNA, proteins, cells, hair, nail clippings, urine, saliva, and other body fluids. Section  
5458 E addresses research involving materials related to human reproduction.

5459 As noted in Chapter 2, an individual whose data and/or biological materials are used in  
5460 research becomes a research participant. In regard to human biological materials,  
5461 individuals may become research participants by agreeing to provide a blood sample for  
5462 use in a particular study. Individuals may also choose to donate organs, tissue or their entire  
5463 body for research that occurs after their death. In this way, they become research  
5464 participants through their donation. Researchers may seek access to human biological  
5465 materials for secondary use in research and, in accordance with Section C of this chapter, a  
5466 research ethics board (REB) may waive a requirement for individual consent.

### 5467 **A. Types of Human Biological Materials**

5468 As described in Chapter 5, information may be categorized along a spectrum of  
5469 identifiability. Similarly, human biological materials vary in the extent to which they are  
5470 identifiable. Researchers and REBs must consider if human biological materials proposed  
5471 for use in research are identifiable or non-identifiable.

5472 Human biological materials are identifiable if they, alone or when combined with other  
5473 information available to the person who receives the materials and/or information, can  
5474 reasonably be expected to identify an individual.

5475 The following categories, similar to those found in Chapter 5 in regard to information, help  
5476 explain the spectrum of identifiability for the purposes of this Policy.

- 5477       ▪ Identified human biological materials – identified human biological materials are  
5478       labelled with a direct identifier (e.g. name, personal health number). Materials and  
5479       any associated information are directly traceable back to a specific individual.
- 5480       ▪ De-identified/coded human biological materials – direct identifiers are removed  
5481       from human biological materials and replaced with a code. Depending on access to  
5482       the code, it may be possible to re-identify specific individuals (e.g. a principal  
5483       investigator who has the key that links the code with a specific individual can re-  
5484       link the biological material to the individual).
- 5485       ▪ Anonymized human biological materials – human biological materials are  
5486       irrevocably stripped of identifiers and a code is not kept to allow future re-linkage.
- 5487       ▪ Anonymous human biological materials – human biological materials that did not have  
5488       identifiers attached to them at the time of collection.

5489 Due to continuing technological development in genetics, individuals with access to stored  
5490 human biological materials are increasingly able to use genetic markers to link a non-  
5491 identifiable sample with an identified sample. For this reason, genetic testing has made it more  
5492 difficult to categorize human biological materials as anonymous or anonymized. The  
5493 definitions above relate to identification of individuals; however, some research involving  
5494 human biological materials, especially genetic research, may involve identification of groups,  
5495 even though the human biological materials are non-identifiable at an individual level.  
5496 Researchers and REBs should be aware of, and guard against, threats to individual privacy and  
5497 autonomy that arise from re-identification risks and risks to groups, particularly where  
5498 sensitive research findings will be linked to specific groups.

5499 To maintain confidentiality, it may seem desirable to use anonymized or anonymous human  
5500 biological materials. However, the scientific requirements of many studies may require use of  
5501 identifiable human biological materials, especially to link materials with information about  
5502 participants, and to avoid using different samples from the same individual. Use of  
5503 anonymized or anonymous human biological materials has the disadvantage of making it  
5504 impossible to offer the benefits of research findings to participants and their families or to alert  
5505 them to relevant clinical findings. This is particularly significant when research may disclose a  
5506 previously undiagnosed condition, such as HIV infection or an inherited predisposition to  
5507 breast cancer, for which potentially effective treatments are available. Use of non-identifiable  
5508 human biological materials also precludes withdrawal of a participant's material from research  
5509 use, even at the participant's request.

## 5510 **B. Collection of Human Biological Materials**

5511 Human biological materials may be obtained in different ways:

- 5512       1. they may be collected expressly for a specific research purpose;
- 5513       2. they may be collected incidentally to medical or diagnostic procedures with no  
5514       initial intent to be used in research; or

5515 3. they may be collected for research or medical or diagnostic purposes with some  
5516 expectation that they may or will also be used in future research, although the  
5517 precise research project(s) may not be known at the time.

5518 The first category above refers to the initial collection of human biological materials for  
5519 research, which is described in this section. The latter two categories are relevant to  
5520 subsequent, secondary uses of human biological materials for research that may not have  
5521 been conceived at the time the tissue was taken. These are described in Section C below.

5522 **Article 12.1** Research involving collection and use of human biological materials  
5523 requires ethics review by an REB, and:

5524 (a) consent of the participant who will donate biological materials; or

5525 (b) in the case of a participant who lacks capacity, consent shall be given by  
5526 an authorized third party who should take into account any research  
5527 directive that applies to the participant; or

5528 (c) in the case of a deceased participant, consent may be given through a  
5529 donation decision made prior to death or by an authorized third party.

5530 **Application** Article 12.1 applies prospectively – that is, prior to the collection of human  
5531 biological materials for research purposes. It applies the general elements of  
5532 consent in Chapter 3 to collection and use of human biological materials.  
5533 During the consent process, a clear distinction should be made between  
5534 consent to research and consent for any clinical procedure or test. In  
5535 practice, this may mean separate consent information and forms, but in any  
5536 event, the different uses must be clearly explained. Individuals who do not  
5537 wish to contribute human biological materials for research are free to  
5538 withhold consent without penalty and without prejudicing access to any  
5539 treatment they would otherwise receive. For individuals who lack capacity  
5540 to consent, the guidance developed in Chapter 3 regarding authorized third  
5541 parties should be observed.

5542 Where a participant expressed preferences for future research participation  
5543 in a research directive before losing capacity, researchers and authorized  
5544 third parties should take such directives into account during the consent  
5545 process. Chapter 3 provides guidance on research directives. REBs and  
5546 researchers should be aware that provincial human tissue gift laws provide a  
5547 legal framework for donation of tissue upon death.

5548 **Article 12.2** To seek consent for use of human biological materials in research,  
5549 researchers shall provide to prospective participants or authorized third  
5550 parties applicable information set out in Article 3.2 as well as the following  
5551 details:

5552 (a) the type and amount of biological materials to be taken;

5553 (b) the manner in which biological materials will be taken, and the safety  
5554 and invasiveness of the procedures for acquisition;

- 5555 (c) intended uses of the biological materials, including any commercial  
5556 use;
- 5557 (d) measures to protect the privacy of and minimize risks to participants;
- 5558 (e) the length of time the biological materials will be kept, how they will  
5559 be preserved, location of storage (e.g. in Canada, outside Canada),  
5560 and process for disposal, if applicable;
- 5561 (f) anticipated linkage of biological materials with information about the  
5562 participant; and
- 5563 (g) the researchers' plan for handling research results and findings,  
5564 including clinically relevant information and incidental findings.

5565 **Application** Chapter 3, especially Article 3.2, provides detailed guidance on the need for  
5566 consent to participation in research. Article 12.2 provides additional  
5567 guidance on information that prospective participants generally require to  
5568 make an informed decision to donate biological materials for use in research.  
5569 While all the basic guidelines of Chapter 3 regarding consent apply to  
5570 research involving human biological materials, some deserve special  
5571 attention. For example, explaining the potential for commercialization or  
5572 financial conflict of interest is important, as some research with human  
5573 biological materials may involve the possibility of significant commercial  
5574 gain. The process for requesting withdrawal of biological materials from  
5575 research should also be clearly explained, along with an explanation of the  
5576 conditions under which researchers would not be able to remove a  
5577 participant's data from the study. For instance, where a participant requests  
5578 withdrawal of biological materials, information already derived from the  
5579 materials and aggregated into research findings cannot be withdrawn.  
5580 Anonymization of biological materials may also preclude subsequent  
5581 withdrawal. Chapter 3 provides further guidance on handling incidental  
5582 findings.

### 5583 **C. Consent and Secondary Use of Identifiable Human Biological** 5584 **Materials for Research Purposes**

5585 Chapter 5 provides detailed guidance on secondary use of information for research  
5586 purposes (in particular, see Articles 5.5 and 5.6). The following section adapts the  
5587 provisions in Chapter 5 to the specific context of research involving secondary use of  
5588 human biological materials. As researchers who seek to use human biological materials for  
5589 research will often also seek access to information about individuals from whom the  
5590 materials originate, this section and Chapter 5 should be read together.

5591 Secondary use refers to the use in research of human biological materials originally collected  
5592 for a purpose other than the current research purpose. A researcher may seek to use human  
5593 biological materials left over from a diagnostic examination or surgical procedure or  
5594 materials that were collected for an earlier study. Secondary use avoids duplication in  
5595 primary collection and therefore reduces burdens and costs for participants and researchers.  
5596 Privacy concerns and questions about the need to seek consent arise, however, when human  
5597 biological materials provided for secondary use in research can be linked to individuals and



5598 when the possibility exists that individuals can be identified in published reports or through  
5599 linkage of human biological materials with other data.

5600 **Article 12.3** Researchers who seek a waiver of consent for secondary use of identifiable  
5601 human biological materials in research shall satisfy the REB that:

5602 (a) identifiable biological materials are essential to the research;

5603 (b) the waiver is unlikely to adversely affect the welfare of individuals from  
5604 whom the materials were collected;

5605 (c) the researchers will take appropriate measures to protect the privacy of  
5606 individuals and to safeguard the biological materials;

5607 (d) the researchers will comply with any known preferences previously  
5608 expressed by individuals about uses of their biological materials;

5609 (e) it is impossible or impracticable to seek consent from individuals from  
5610 whom the materials were collected; and

5611 (f) the researchers have obtained any other necessary (e.g. legal) permission  
5612 for secondary use of biological materials for research purposes.

5613 If a researcher satisfies the conditions in Article 12.3(a) to (f), the REB may  
5614 approve the research without requiring consent from the individuals from whom  
5615 the biological materials were collected.

5616 **Application** This Policy does not require that researchers seek consent from individuals for  
5617 the secondary use of non-identifiable human biological materials. However,  
5618 consent must be sought where researchers propose to use identifiable human  
5619 biological materials, unless the researcher satisfies all the requirements in  
5620 Article 12.3.

5621 The waiver of consent in this article is specific to secondary use of human  
5622 biological materials. The terms of Article 3.7 addresses alteration and waiver of  
5623 consent in other circumstances and does not apply here.

5624 Secondary use of human biological materials identifiable as originating from a  
5625 specific Aboriginal community, or a segment of the Aboriginal community at  
5626 large, is addressed in Article 9.20.<sup>1</sup>

5627 Impracticable refers to undue hardship or onerousness such that the conduct of  
5628 the research is jeopardized; it does not mean mere inconvenience. Consent may  
5629 be impossible or impracticable when the group is very large or its members are  
5630 likely to be deceased, geographically dispersed or difficult to track. Attempting  
5631 to track and contact members of the group may raise additional privacy  
5632 concerns. Financial, human and other resources required to contact individuals  
5633 and seek consent may impose undue hardship. In some jurisdictions, privacy  
5634 laws may preclude researchers from using personal information to contact  
5635 individuals to seek their consent for secondary use of information.<sup>2</sup>

5636 At the time of initial collection, individuals may have had an opportunity to

5637 express preferences about future uses of biological materials, including research  
5638 uses. For example, individuals may have made an express donation of biological  
5639 materials for research in accordance with human tissue gift legislation, or may  
5640 have expressed objection to future use. Researchers and REBs shall respect any  
5641 known preferences.

5642 An REB may require that researchers engage in discussion with representatives  
5643 of individuals or groups from whom the biological materials were collected  
5644 where the proposed research involves greater sensitivity (e.g. research involving  
5645 stigmatizing conditions). Discussion is not intended as proxy consent. Rather, a  
5646 goal of discussion is to seek input regarding the proposed research, such as the  
5647 design of the research, measures for privacy protection, and potential uses of  
5648 research findings. Discussion may also be useful to determine that the research  
5649 will not adversely affect the welfare of individuals from whom the biological  
5650 materials were collected. Researchers should advise the REB of outcomes of such  
5651 discussion and the REB may require modifications to the research proposal based  
5652 on the feedback.

5653 **Article 12.4** When secondary use of identifiable human biological materials without consent  
5654 has been approved under Article 12.3, researchers who propose to contact  
5655 individuals for additional biological materials or information shall, prior to  
5656 contact, seek REB approval of the plan for making contact.

5657 **Application** In certain cases, a research goal may be achieved only through follow-up  
5658 contact with individuals to collect additional biological materials or  
5659 information. Under Article 12.3, the REB may have approved secondary use  
5660 without consent based, in part, on the impossibility or impracticability of  
5661 seeking consent. Where contact with a sub-group is feasible, researchers  
5662 may subsequently wish to attempt to make contact with some individuals to  
5663 obtain additional information or biological materials. Contact with  
5664 individuals whose previously collected biological materials have been  
5665 approved for secondary use in research raises privacy concerns. Individuals  
5666 might not want to be contacted by researchers or might be upset that  
5667 identifiable biological materials were disclosed to researchers without their  
5668 consent. The research benefits of follow-up contact must clearly outweigh  
5669 the risks to individuals of follow-up contact, and the REB must be satisfied  
5670 that the proposed manner of follow-up contact minimizes risks for  
5671 individuals. The proposed plan should explain who will contact individuals  
5672 to invite their participation in the research (e.g. a representative of the  
5673 organization that holds the individual’s biological materials) and the nature  
5674 of their relationship with those individuals. Researchers will need to seek  
5675 consent from these individuals for any new collection of biological materials  
5676 or information. Article 3.1 provides further guidance on consent and  
5677 approaches to recruitment.

#### 5678 **D. Storage and Banking of Human Biological Materials**

5679 Collection and retention of human biological materials in banks, or “biobanks,” creates an  
5680 increasingly important resource for research. Biobanks vary widely in their characteristics.

5681 Some are very small and others hold biological materials from thousands of individuals. They  
5682 may be disease-specific or contain materials from a wide population base. Different types of  
5683 human biological materials may be stored in biobanks, such as blood, tumour or tissue  
5684 samples. Biobanks may include or be linked with databases of identifiable or non-identifiable  
5685 information. Materials held in a biobank may be intended only for use in a specific study or a  
5686 biobank may be established to provide access to biological materials for numerous studies  
5687 over many years. Researchers engaged in multi-centre research may seek access to materials  
5688 held in biobanks in different jurisdictions; Chapter 8 provides additional guidance for such  
5689 research.

5690 Biobanking offers potential benefits by establishing sources of human biological materials to  
5691 facilitate research. Access to stored human biological materials – and associated information  
5692 about individuals whose materials are banked – can be particularly useful in helping  
5693 researchers understand diseases that result from complex interactions between our genetic  
5694 makeup, environmental exposures and lifestyles. Banking of human biological materials may  
5695 also present risks to individuals whose biological materials and other personal information are  
5696 stored, accessed, used, retained and disclosed through a biobank. Research involving such  
5697 materials may also implicate the interests of biological relatives and others with shared genetic  
5698 characteristics.

5699 **Article 12.5** Institutions and researchers that maintain biobanks:

5700 (a) shall ensure that they have or use appropriate facilities, equipment, policies  
5701 and procedures to store human biological materials safely and in  
5702 accordance with applicable standards; and

5703 (b) shall establish appropriate physical, administrative and technical safeguards  
5704 to protect human biological materials and any information about  
5705 participants from unauthorized handling.

5706 **Application** Safe storage of human biological materials is important to maintain their  
5707 scientific value and to protect materials and associated information about  
5708 participants. Procedures for storage and record keeping shall include effective  
5709 measures to ensure that participants' identities are protected. Such measures  
5710 include the security of facilities and effective procedures for data handling,  
5711 record keeping and regulating access to human biological materials and  
5712 information. Appropriate governance of biobanks is also important for  
5713 managing access to and use of stored biological materials. The appropriate  
5714 governance structure and management of a biobank will vary depending on its  
5715 size and uses.

5716 Organizations that maintain biobanks may have their own policies on privacy,  
5717 confidentiality and access to materials. Researchers should be aware of  
5718 requirements for compliance with such policies. For example, researchers may  
5719 be required to apply to the organization for permission to access biological  
5720 samples, and they may be required to enter into an agreement with the  
5721 organization that sets out conditions for research access and use of materials in  
5722 the biobank.

5723 Identifiable data derived from human biological materials may be linked to  
5724 other research or public databases. Such data linking can be a powerful  
5725 research tool and valuable resource for monitoring the health of populations,  
5726 understanding factors influencing disease, and evaluating health services and  
5727 interventions. Data linkage raises separate privacy issues, discussed in Section  
5728 E of Chapter 5.

5729 **E. Research Involving Materials Related to Human Reproduction**

5730 This section sets out ethics guidelines relating to research involving human embryos,  
5731 fetuses, fetal tissue, reproductive materials and stem cells. For the purposes of this Policy  
5732 the following definitions apply:<sup>3</sup>

- 5733     ▪ Embryo means a human organism during the first 56 days of its development  
5734     following fertilization or creation, excluding any time during which its development  
5735     has been suspended, and includes any cell derived from such an organism that is used  
5736     for the purpose of creating a human being.
- 5737     ▪ Fetus means a human organism during the period of its development beginning on the  
5738     57<sup>th</sup> day following fertilization or creation, excluding any time during which its  
5739     development has been suspended, and ending at birth.
- 5740     ▪ Fetal tissue includes membranes, placenta, umbilical cord, amniotic fluid and other  
5741     tissue that contains genetic information about the fetus.
- 5742     ▪ Human reproductive materials means a sperm, ovum or other human cell or a human  
5743     gene, and includes a part of any of them.

5744 **Research Involving Human Reproductive Materials**

5745 While research involving human reproductive materials has great promise for assisting the  
5746 development of healthy pregnancies, curing illness, and repairing or rebuilding tissue, it raises  
5747 special ethical considerations. Accordingly, this research has provoked vigorous debate.  
5748 Discussion and reflection should continue as our scientific understanding develops.

5749 Significant ethical issues include consent to research involving reproductive materials, privacy  
5750 concerns, the potential for harm to those who provide reproductive materials, an embryo or  
5751 fetus, and potential commodification of human reproductive materials and reproductive  
5752 labour. Researchers and REBs have a continuing duty to remain mindful of the public interest  
5753 in these issues, and to respect policy, legal and regulatory requirements. In particular,  
5754 researchers and REBs should be aware of the detailed requirements and prohibitions found in  
5755 the *Assisted Human Reproduction Act*.

5756 **Article 12.6** In addition to requirements in this Chapter that apply to all research  
5757 involving human biological materials, the following guidelines apply to  
5758 research involving human reproductive materials.

- 5759     (a) Research using reproductive materials in the context of an anticipated  
5760     or ongoing pregnancy, shall not be undertaken if the knowledge sought  
5761     can reasonably be obtained by alternative methods.

5762 (b) Reproductive materials shall not be obtained, for research use, through  
5763 commercial transaction, including exchange for services.

5764 **Application** Because of the potential for harm to the woman or the fetus, Article 12.6(a)  
5765 requires that the use of such reproductive materials be avoided where  
5766 pregnancy is anticipated or ongoing, if research goals may be accomplished  
5767 in some other way.

5768 Article 12.6(b) reflects concerns about the commercialization or  
5769 commodification of human reproduction. The purchase or sale, directly or  
5770 indirectly, of any gamete, *in vitro* embryo or other reproductive material for the  
5771 purpose of creating a human being, is ethically unacceptable.

## 5772 **Research Involving Human Embryos**

5773 **Article 12.7** Research on *in vitro* embryos already created and intended for implantation  
5774 to achieve pregnancy is acceptable if intended to benefit the embryo or to  
5775 advance knowledge if:

5776 (a) research interventions will not compromise the care of the woman, or the  
5777 subsequent fetus; and

5778 (b) researchers closely monitor the safety and comfort of the woman and the  
5779 safety of the embryo.

5780 **Application** Research potentially altering the embryo by chemical or physical manipulation  
5781 should be distinguished from research directed at ensuring normal fetal  
5782 development. For example, the evaluation of potential teratogens and their  
5783 effects on certain cell lineages may use early embryos, but those embryos must  
5784 not be implanted for an ongoing pregnancy.

5785 The *Assisted Human Reproduction Act* prohibits the creation of a human  
5786 embryo specifically for research purposes, with the limited exception of  
5787 creating an embryo for the purpose of improving assisted reproduction  
5788 procedures.

5789 **Article 12.8** Research involving embryos that have been created for reproductive purposes,  
5790 but are no longer required for this purpose, may be ethically acceptable if:

5791 (a) the ova and sperm from which they are formed were obtained in  
5792 accordance with Article 12.7;

5793 (b) where the embryo was created using donor gametes, free and informed  
5794 consent was provided by the gamete donors;

5795 (c) embryos exposed to manipulations not directed specifically to their  
5796 ongoing normal development will not be transferred for continuing  
5797 pregnancy; and

5798 (d) research involving embryos takes place only during the first 14 days  
5799 after their formation by combination of the gametes.

5800 **Application** Research on embryos requires the consent of the gamete donors. The REB may  
5801 not waive the requirement for such consent. In particular, researchers and  
5802 REBs should be aware of the Consent Regulation under the *Assisted Human*  
5803 *Reproduction Act*.<sup>4</sup>

#### 5804 **Research Involving Fetuses and Fetal Tissue**

5805 **Article 12.9** Research involving a human fetus or fetal tissue:

5806 (a) requires the consent of the woman; and

5807 (b) should not compromise the woman's ability to decide whether to  
5808 continue her pregnancy.

5809 **Application** Research may be undertaken on methods to treat, *in utero*, a fetus with  
5810 genetic or congenital disorders. Because the fetus and the woman cannot be  
5811 treated separately, any intervention to one involves an intervention to the  
5812 other. Research involving a fetus or fetal tissue should be guided by respect  
5813 for the woman's autonomy and physical integrity. Research methods on the  
5814 treatment of fetuses *in utero* pose no issues that are not addressed elsewhere  
5815 in this Policy. Researchers should ensure that a clear distinction is made  
5816 between consent to research and consent for any clinical procedures or  
5817 testing. In practice, this may mean separate consent information and  
5818 documents, but in any event, the different uses must be clearly explained.

#### 5819 **Pluripotent Stem Cell Research**

5820 **Article 12.10** Researchers who intend to conduct research to derive or use pluripotent stem  
5821 cells shall follow the Guidelines for Human Pluripotent Stem Cell  
5822 Research,<sup>5</sup> as amended from time to time.

#### 5823 **Hybrids and Chimeras**

5824 Research involving the creation of animal-human hybrids and chimeras may raise  
5825 serious ethical concerns, and federal legislation prohibits certain activities relating to  
5826 their creation. Researchers and REBs are referred to the *Assisted Human Reproduction*  
5827 *Act* for these prohibitions. This legislation provides the following definitions.

5828 Hybrid means:

- 5829     ▪ a human ovum that has been fertilized by a sperm of a non-human life form;
- 5830     ▪ an ovum of a non-human life form that has been fertilized by a human sperm;
- 5831     ▪ a human ovum into which the nucleus of a cell of a non-human life form has been  
5832     introduced;
- 5833     ▪ an ovum of a non-human life form into which the nucleus of a human cell has been  
5834     introduced; or
- 5835     ▪ a human ovum or an ovum of a non-human life form that otherwise contains  
5836     haploid sets of chromosomes from both a human being and a non-human life form.

5837 Chimera means:

- 5838     ▪ an embryo into which a cell of any non-human life form has been introduced; or
- 5839     ▪ an embryo that consists of cells of more than one embryo, fetus or human being.

## 5840 **Endnotes**

---

<sup>1</sup> See also the Canadian Institutes of Health Research Guidelines for Health Research Involving Aboriginal People, [www.cihr-irsc.gc.ca/e/29134.html](http://www.cihr-irsc.gc.ca/e/29134.html)

<sup>2</sup> For discussion of factors relevant to assessing impracticability of consent, see, for example, the Canadian Institutes of Health Research *Best Practices for Protecting Privacy in Health Research* (September 2005), Section 3.3 “Secondary Use,” pp. 39 and 40.

<sup>3</sup> The definitions of embryo, fetus and human reproductive materials are taken from the *Assisted Human Reproduction Act* (2004, c. 2), [www.laws.justice.gc.ca/en/A-13.4/](http://www.laws.justice.gc.ca/en/A-13.4/)

<sup>4</sup> Assisted Human Reproduction (Section 8 Consent) Regulations (SOR 2007-137), [www.laws.justice.gc.ca/en/SOR-2007-137/FullText.html](http://www.laws.justice.gc.ca/en/SOR-2007-137/FullText.html)

<sup>5</sup> The Guidelines for Human Pluripotent Stem Cell Research, [www.cihr-irsc.gc.ca/e/34460.html](http://www.cihr-irsc.gc.ca/e/34460.html)

## **References**

- 
- Organisation for Economic Co-operation and Development (OECD), *Guidelines for Human Biobanks and Genetic Research Databases*, 2009, [www.oecd.org/sti/biotechnology/hbgrd](http://www.oecd.org/sti/biotechnology/hbgrd)
  - The International Conference on Harmonisation of Technical Requirements for the Registration of Pharmaceuticals for Human Use (ICH) contains definitions of biological sample coding categories. Health Canada has adopted these definitions, [www.hc-sc.gc.ca/dhp-mpps/prodpharma/applic-demande/guide-ld/ich/efficac/e15-eng.php](http://www.hc-sc.gc.ca/dhp-mpps/prodpharma/applic-demande/guide-ld/ich/efficac/e15-eng.php)
  - Fonds de la recherche en Santé du Québec, *Final Report: Advisory Group on a Governance Framework for Data Banks and Biobanks Used for Health Research* (2006), [www.frsq.gouv.qc.ca/en/ethique/pdfs\\_ethique/Rapport\\_groupe\\_conseil\\_anglais.pdf](http://www.frsq.gouv.qc.ca/en/ethique/pdfs_ethique/Rapport_groupe_conseil_anglais.pdf)





# Chapter 13

5841

5842

## HUMAN GENETIC RESEARCH

5843 Human genetic research involves the study of genetic factors responsible for human traits  
5844 and the interaction of those factors with each other and with the environment. Research in  
5845 this area includes identification of genes that comprise: the human genome; functions of  
5846 genes; the characterization of normal and disease conditions in individuals, biological  
5847 relatives, families and groups; and studies involving gene therapy. Participants in clinical  
5848 trials are increasingly being asked to participate in genetic studies in addition to the primary  
5849 clinical trial. With the increasing prevalence of genetic research, especially whole-genome  
5850 research, researchers, research ethics boards (REBs) and participants should be aware of the  
5851 ethical issues that this research raises.

5852 Genetic research may have profound social impacts, both positive and negative. As genetic  
5853 research advances, genes and their alleles (versions) are being identified, but the function of  
5854 each gene and its relationship to disease conditions or other characteristics may not be clear.  
5855 In single-gene disorders, for example, an allele of a single gene is directly related to  
5856 hereditary disease. More commonly, diseases or personal characteristics are influenced by  
5857 multiple genes and environmental factors.

5858 Research may help us better understand the human genome and genetic contributions to  
5859 health and disease. It may lead to new approaches to preventing and treating disease.  
5860 Individuals may benefit from learning about their genetic predispositions if intervention  
5861 strategies are available to prevent or mitigate disease onset and symptoms, or otherwise  
5862 promote health. Genetic research also has the potential, however, to stigmatize individuals  
5863 or groups who may experience discrimination or other harms because of their genetic status,  
5864 or to treat them unfairly or inequitably.

### 5865 **A. Application of Core Principles to Genetic Research**

5866 Genetic information has implications beyond the individual because it may reveal  
5867 information about biological relatives and others with whom the individual shares genetic  
5868 ancestry. The participation of an individual in genetic research may therefore have  
5869 ramifications for these other persons or groups. In some cases, researchers specifically seek  
5870 to conduct genetic research with members of families or communities. Such research  
5871 requires particular attention to the social and cultural contexts in which participants live.  
5872 Research with families or communities may raise special considerations regarding  
5873 recruitment of participants, consent processes, privacy and confidentiality and community  
5874 engagement.

5875 **Article 13.1** Guidance regarding proportionate review, consent, privacy and confidentiality,  
5876 research with human biological materials, and other ethical guidance described in  
5877 earlier chapters of this Policy apply equally to human genetic research.

5878 **Application** In developing and reviewing proposals involving genetic research, researchers  
5879 and REBs should refer to earlier chapters in this Policy, including consent in  
5880 Chapter 3, privacy and confidentiality in Chapter 5 and human biological  
5881 materials and materials related to human production in Chapter 12. Other  
5882 chapters relevant to the specific research proposal should also be consulted, such  
5883 as Chapter 9 about research involving Aboriginal peoples or Chapter 11 on  
5884 clinical trials. This chapter does not reiterate guidance set out in earlier chapters.  
5885 Rather, it focuses on issues that arise specifically in the context of human genetic  
5886 research and provides guidance for handling of information revealed through  
5887 genetic research, provision of genetic counselling, participation of families and  
5888 communities in genetic research, banking of human biological materials and  
5889 research involving gene transfer.

5890 **B. Plans for Handling Information Revealed through Genetic**  
5891 **Research**

5892 **Article 13.2** Researchers conducting genetic research shall:

5893 (a) in their research proposal, develop a plan for handling information that may  
5894 be revealed through their genetic research;

5895 (b) submit their plan to the REB; and

5896 (c) advise potential participants of the plan for handling information revealed  
5897 through the research.

5898 **Application** The types of information that may be revealed through genetic research – and  
5899 implications of this information for participants and their biological relatives –  
5900 require that researchers and REBs ensure that an appropriate plan is in place for  
5901 handling information. In some cases, genetic research may reveal known gene-  
5902 disease associations or other information, including incidental findings, that may  
5903 be clinically relevant for individuals or their biological relatives in treating or  
5904 alleviating health conditions or risks. In other cases, research may reveal  
5905 information that is inconclusive in its scientific, clinical or other implications.  
5906 Genetic research may also reveal information about family relationships,  
5907 including adoption and non-paternity.

5908 This range of information varies in its possible implications for individuals. In  
5909 some cases, follow-up clinical testing and counselling may be recommended.  
5910 Information may also have implications for biological relatives and raise  
5911 disclosure considerations, as discussed in Article 13.3(b). Genetic information  
5912 may also affect an individual's eligibility for employment or insurance, for  
5913 example, if an individual who gathers genetic information is required to disclose  
5914 disease predisposition risks to participants' employers or insurers.

5915 The plan for handling information should take into account factors such as  
5916 clinical relevance, risks and potential benefits for research participants and  
5917 other people whose interests are implicated. Plans may include sharing  
5918 individual findings with participants or notification of general, non-identifiable  
5919 research results through newsletters, websites or other means. In regard to

5920 release or publication of research findings, the provisions of Chapter 5 apply.  
5921 In some cases, researchers may consider that the most ethical course of action  
5922 is not to share results of genetic research with participants (e.g. where clinical  
5923 significance is unknown due to novelty of the genetic investigation).

5924 **Article 13.3** Where researchers plan to share findings with individuals, researchers shall  
5925 provide participants an opportunity to:

5926 (a) make informed choices about whether they wish to receive information  
5927 about themselves; and

5928 (b) express preferences about whether information will be shared with  
5929 biological relatives or others with whom the participants have a family  
5930 or group relationship.

5931 **Application** An individual’s right to privacy includes an interest in not knowing  
5932 information about himself or herself. Further, the core principles on which  
5933 this Policy is based emphasize autonomous choices regarding research  
5934 participation. To permit participants to make informed choices about  
5935 whether to receive information about themselves, researchers should explain  
5936 the types of findings that may be revealed (as discussed in the application to  
5937 Article 13.2) and the potential implications of these findings for the  
5938 participant, and should give the participant options for receiving different  
5939 types of information.

5940 Where individual results will be shared with participants, researchers must  
5941 develop appropriate procedures for communicating results in accordance  
5942 with the participant’s preferences or instructions. These procedures should  
5943 be clearly described in the researcher’s plan. This may include direct  
5944 communication of results to the participant, or communication to a specified  
5945 health care provider or other party authorized to receive the information. As  
5946 discussed below, sharing research results with individuals may give rise to a  
5947 need for genetic counselling.

5948 Participants in genetic research should have an opportunity to express their  
5949 preferences about sharing of information with relatives or others. These  
5950 preferences are subject to overriding considerations that may warrant  
5951 disclosure of information to relatives in exceptional circumstances where  
5952 genetic research reveals information about a serious or life-threatening  
5953 condition that can be prevented or treated through intervention. Articles 5.1  
5954 and 5.2 provide guidance on researchers’ ethical duty of confidentiality and  
5955 situations where researchers may have a requirement to disclose information  
5956 to third parties.

5957 Chapter 5 also requires researchers to provide details to the REB regarding their  
5958 proposed measures for safeguarding information through its full life cycle,  
5959 including dissemination, and to guard against risks of re-identification. Funders  
5960 of human genomics research may have policies requiring researchers to make  
5961 genome sequence data publicly accessible. Where such policies apply,  
5962 researchers must advise the REB and participants of data-sharing requirements

5963 and measures for protection of personal information. See Articles 5.2 and 5.3  
5964 for further guidance. Publication of aggregated data from genome-wide  
5965 association studies has raised concerns about individual re-identification<sup>1</sup>. This  
5966 example underscores the need for researchers and REBs to ensure that measures  
5967 for safeguarding information are responsive to risks that arise from continuing  
5968 advances in genetic research and data linkage.

### 5969 **C. Genetic Counselling**

5970 **Article 13.4** Where researchers plan to share results of genetic research with participants,  
5971 the research protocol should make genetic counselling available at that time,  
5972 where appropriate.

5973 **Application** Where the plan for handling information revealed in genetic research involves  
5974 sharing individual results with participants, genetic counselling may be  
5975 required to explain the meaning and implications of the information. For  
5976 example, genetic counselling can help explain the clinical significance of the  
5977 information, whether health care interventions or lifestyle changes are  
5978 recommended, and implications of the information for biological relatives.  
5979 Researchers should explain differences between genetic testing in a research  
5980 context and testing in a clinical context. Clinical genetic testing may be needed  
5981 to clarify or confirm results obtained in research. Where researchers share  
5982 information with biological relatives or other family or group members, genetic  
5983 counselling should be made available to them and the research participants.  
5984 The service provider must have the appropriate experience or training to  
5985 provide genetic counselling, but need not necessarily hold a diploma, degree or  
5986 professional designation in genetic counselling.

### 5987 **D. Genetic Research Involving Families**

5988 **Article 13.5** Researchers who seek to recruit members of a family to participate in  
5989 genetic research shall:

5990 (a) ensure recruitment processes respect privacy and other personal interests  
5991 of family members; and

5992 (b) seek consent from individual family members.

5993 **Application** Recruitment of members of a family may take place in various ways:  
5994 through (a) the researcher, (b) an individual participant, or (c) a third party  
5995 on behalf of an individual participant. A family group, such as parents and a  
5996 child or several adult siblings, may all receive an invitation at the same time  
5997 from the researcher to participate in genetic research. Alternatively,  
5998 researchers may seek permission from an individual participant to contact  
5999 family members to invite participation. Where appropriate to respect privacy  
6000 interests or known sensitivities, it may be preferable for the participant to  
6001 make initial contact with the family member. The participant may prefer to  
6002 identify a third party to provide the family member with information about  
6003 the opportunity to participate in genetic research. An approach by someone

6004 in a position of authority over the family member may raise concerns about  
6005 undue influence or manipulation. Refer to Chapter 3 for further guidance in  
6006 regard to the voluntariness of consent.

6007 Family members may have conflicting views about participation in research,  
6008 and some may have specific sensitivities or objections. Researchers should  
6009 recognize the potential for conflict within families and be respectful of any  
6010 known sensitivities. Where researchers seek participation from children or  
6011 other members of a family who may lack capacity to consent, applicable  
6012 provisions in Chapter 3 shall be followed.

## 6013 **E. Genetic Research Involving Communities**

6014 **Article 13.6** Where researchers intend to recruit participants for genetic research based  
6015 on their membership in specific communities, it may be appropriate for  
6016 researchers to discuss the research with community leaders or  
6017 representatives, in addition to seeking consent from individual participants.  
6018 In these cases, researchers shall provide details to the REB about their  
6019 proposed methods for engaging in discussion.

6020 **Application** Some genetic research seeks to explore genetic variations within specific  
6021 groups or communities. Such research may raise ethical concerns regarding  
6022 stigmatization, unfair or inequitable treatment of groups, as well as social  
6023 disruption in communities, especially if individual members disagree about  
6024 participation in research. Engaging in discussion with leaders or representatives  
6025 of the community may be appropriate. This determination will depend on  
6026 factors such as: the objectives of the proposed research (in particular, the extent  
6027 to which membership in, or characteristics of, the community are a key aspect  
6028 of the research); the risks and potential benefits of the research to the  
6029 community; the nature of the community from which participants will be  
6030 recruited; and the community's organizational structure.

6031 Individuals within a community may have conflicting views about participation  
6032 in research, including disagreements between leaders and members. Such  
6033 conflicts may involve attempts by some to influence or coerce choices of others  
6034 about whether to participate in research. Researchers should recognize the  
6035 potential for conflict within groups and ensure that consent and community  
6036 discussion processes foster free and informed decisions by individual members  
6037 of a community. Refer to Chapter 3 for further guidance in regard to  
6038 voluntariness of consent.

6039 Researchers who propose to conduct genetic research involving Aboriginal  
6040 participants or communities, or to use human biological materials identifiable  
6041 as originating from Aboriginal peoples, should refer to the detailed discussion  
6042 in Chapter 9 for further guidance.

## 6043 **F. Genetic Material Banks**

6044 **Article 13.7** (a) Researchers who propose research involving collection and banking of

6045 genetic material shall indicate in their research proposal, and inform  
6046 potential research participants, how they plan to address the associated  
6047 ethical issues, including confidentiality, privacy, storage, use of the data  
6048 and results, possibility of commercialization of research findings,  
6049 withdrawal by the participant, and future contact of participants, families  
6050 and groups.

6051 (b) Researchers who propose research involving secondary use of previously  
6052 collected and banked genetic material shall, likewise, indicate in their  
6053 research proposal how they plan to address associated ethical issues.

6054 **Application** Collection of human biological materials, including genetic materials, and their  
6055 retention in biobanks provides an increasingly important research resource.  
6056 Guidance for research involving human biological materials (see Chapter 12)  
6057 applies to banking of genetic material. In Chapter 12, Section D provides  
6058 guidance for creation of biobanks of genetic material, and Section C addresses  
6059 access to and use of previously collected genetic material. Researchers who  
6060 intend to bank genetic material shall inform participants of the potential for  
6061 secondary use. Guidance regarding secondary use set out in Chapter 5 is also  
6062 relevant.

## 6063 **G. Gene Transfer**

6064 Guidance set out in Chapter 11 applies to clinical trial research involving gene transfer. In the  
6065 context of gene transfer research, researchers and REBs should pay careful attention to the  
6066 need to assess safety, minimize risk, and avert therapeutic misconception. Researchers have  
6067 obligations to share new information that may be relevant to ongoing consent, and to follow  
6068 up with participants to identify adverse events.

6069 Gene alteration involves the transfer of genes into cells to induce an altered capacity of the  
6070 cell. Viruses are commonly used vectors (carriers) to introduce the gene into the host genome.  
6071 Gene alteration is irreversible – the cell and its descendants are forever altered and introduced  
6072 changes cannot be removed. The possible use of germ line alteration implies changes that  
6073 could be transmitted to future generations.

6074 Gene transfer research that involves alteration of human germ line cells is governed by statute  
6075 in Canada under the *Assisted Human Reproduction Act*<sup>2</sup> and its regulations. Researchers  
6076 should be aware of how these apply to their work.

6077 The special circumstances of gene transfer must be explained to potential research participants  
6078 (or authorized third parties) during the consent process. This includes providing information  
6079 about uncertain and potentially latent risks of gene transfer and any processes for long-term  
6080 follow up of participants. Guidance regarding inclusion in research (see Chapter 4) should be  
6081 followed where gene transfer research involves children or others who lack capacity to  
6082 consent for themselves.

6083 **Endnotes**

---

<sup>1</sup> In 2008, the U.S. National Institutes of Health amended its policy on publication of and access to data from genome-wide association studies. See National Institutes of Health, *Modifications to Genome-Wide Association Studies (GWAS) Data Access*, August 28, 2008, [http://grants.nih.gov/grants/gwas/data\\_sharing\\_policy\\_modifications\\_20080828.pdf](http://grants.nih.gov/grants/gwas/data_sharing_policy_modifications_20080828.pdf)

<sup>2</sup> Assisted Human Reproduction Act (2004, c. 2), <http://laws.justice.gc.ca/en/A-13.4/>